# **NORSOK STANDARD**

R-002

Draft Edition 2, June 2011

# Lifting equipment

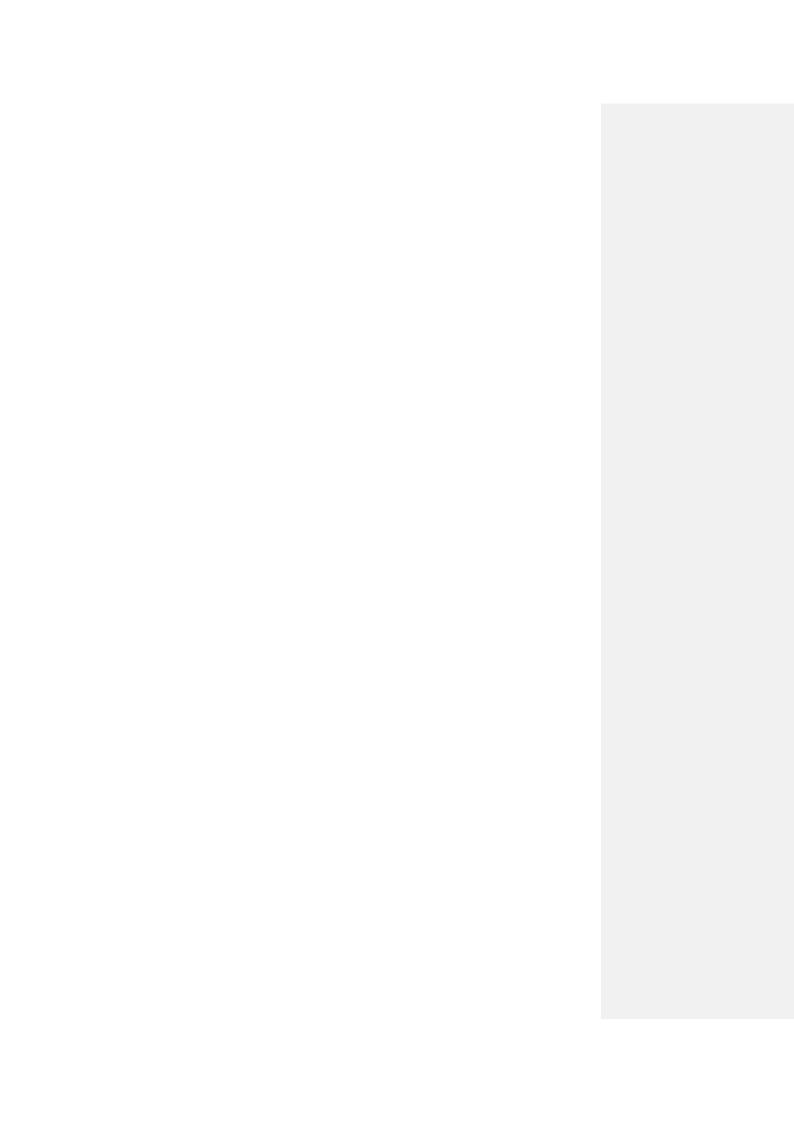
## WARNING

The hearing period for this standard is closed and the document is currently being updated based upon the comments that have been received. The draft edition of the standard is made available in the interim period. Please be aware that the final version will contain modifications compared to this draft edition.

This NORSOK standard is developed with broad petroleum industry participation by interested parties in the Norwegian petroleum industry and is owned by the Norwegian petroleum industry represented by The Norwegian Oil Industry Association (OLF) and The Federation of Norwegian Industry. Please note that whilst every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of this NORSOK standard, neither OLF nor The Federation of Norwegian Industry or any of their members will assume liability for any use thereof. Standards Norway is responsible for the administration and publication of this NORSOK standard.

Standards Norway Strandveien 18, P.O. Box 242 N-1326 Lysaker NORWAY Telephone: + 47 67 83 86 00 Fax: + 47 67 83 86 01 Email: petroleum@standard.no Website: www.standard.no/petroleum

Copyrights reserved



# Draft Edition 2, June 2011

Fo	reword		5
Int	roduct	ion	5
1		Scope	7
2	2.1 2.2	Normative and informative references Normative references Informative references	7 7 9
3	3.1 3.2	<b>Terms, definitions and abbreviations</b> Terms and definitions Abbreviations	<b>10</b> 10 13
4	4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 4.7 4.8 4.9 4.10 4.11 4.12 4.13 4.14 4.15	General safety requirements Safety Fitness for use Reliability and availability Principle of safety integration Inherently safe design measures Safeguarding and complementary protective measures Information for use Strength proportion Maintenance Quality management system Risk assessment Risk reduction Documentation of risk assessment Verification Qualification of new technology	14 14 14 14 15 15 15 16 16 18 18
5	5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5 5.6 5.7 5.8 5.9 5.10 5.12 5.13 5.14 5.15 5.16 5.17 5.18 5.20 5.21 5.22 5.22 5.22 5.23	Common requirements Suitability Materials and products Fire and explosion Ergonomics Environmental conditions Operational loads Strength and stability – structure and mechanisms Strength and stability – classification High risk applications Power systems Electro technical equipment Non-electro technical equipment Controls, control stations and control systems Limiting and indicating devices Emergency systems Communication Pneumatics Hydraulics Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) Exhaust and noise emissions Utility systems Fabrication Installation and assembly Corrosion protection Technical construction file	19 19 19 20 22 23 24 24 24 24 24 25 26 26 26 27 27 27
		Normative) Launching and recovery appliances for life saving equipment	29
		(Normative) Material handling principles	76
		Normative) Lifting accessories – Group (G11)	83
An	nex D	(Normative) Lifting equipment in drilling area	107

NORSOK standard Page 3 of 173

NORSOK standard R-002	Draft Edition 2, June 2011
Annex E (Normative) Elevators and lifts	119
Annex F (Normative) Portable units	121
Annex G (Normative) Cranes	136
Annex H (Normative) Foundations and suspensions	149
Annex I (Informative) Selection of elastic pennant – Calculation example	157
Annex J (Informative) Lifting lugs and mating shackles	161

NORSOK standard Page 4 of 173

## **Foreword**

The NORSOK standards are developed by the Norwegian petroleum industry to ensure adequate safety, value adding and cost effectiveness for petroleum industry developments and operations. Furthermore, NORSOK standards are, as far as possible, intended to replace oil company specifications and serve as references in the authorities' regulations.

The NORSOK standards are normally based on recognised international standards, adding the provisions deemed necessary to fill the broad needs of the Norwegian petroleum industry. Where relevant, NORSOK standards will be used to provide the Norwegian industry input to the international standardisation process. Subject to development and publication of international standards, the relevant NORSOK standard will be withdrawn.

The NORSOK standards are developed according to the consensus principle generally applicable for most standards work and according to established procedures defined in NORSOK A-001.

The NORSOK standards are prepared and published with support by The Norwegian Oil Industry Association (OLF), The Federation of Norwegian Industry, Norwegian Shipowners' Association and The Petroleum Safety Authority Norway.

NORSOK standards are administered and published by Standards Norway.

This standard is published in two steps. The final standard is planned to contain the following annexes:

Annex A: Launching and recovery appliances for life saving equipment

Annex B: Material handling Annex C: Lifting accessories

Annex D: Drilling hoisting equipment

Annex E: Lifts

Annex F: Portable units Annex G: Cranes

Annex H: Foundations and suspensions

Annex I: Selection of elastic pennant – calculation example

Annex J: Lifting lugs and mating shackles

## Introduction

The main purpose of this NORSOK standard is to contribute to an acceptable level of safety for humans, the environment and material assets in the petroleum industry by giving technical requirements for lifting equipment.

During development of this NORSOK standard, due consideration has been given to relevant EU Directives, Norwegian regulations, European Standard and International standard, as well as other formal documents of relevance. It should be noted, however, that this NORSOK standard is not a harmonised standard, and it does not contain all the technical and administrative requirements of the applicable regulations and directives, see the foreword.

The expert group responsible for this NORSOK standard has agreed that the main safety philosophy and principal requirements of the standard shall be based on applicable safety and health requirements stated in relevant EU directives, e.g. the Machinery directive (2006/42/EC), ATEX directive (94/9/EC), LVD (2006/95/EC), EMC directive (2004/108/EC), PED (97/23/EC). This applies regardless of type of installation or unit on which lifting equipment is installed. Administrative requirements, however, (e.g. CE marking, declaration of conformity, requirements for EC Type-examination, etc.) do not form part of this NORSOK standard.

The requirements of this NORSOK standard are given in clause 4, clause 5 and in the annexes. The combination of all these requirements forms the technical basis the lifting equipment has to comply with. In case of conflict between similar, but not identical requirements, the requirements of the annexes prevail over the common requirements of clause 5, which in turn prevails over the safety requirements of clause 4.

NORSOK standard Page 5 of 173

Draft Edition 2, June 2011

However, this general rule may only be waived if the manufacturer makes use of a recognised solution and documents by means of a risk assessment that said solution gives an equal or better safety level than the conflicting requirement.

NORSOK standard Page 6 of 173

#### Scope

This NORSOK standard is valid for lifting equipment on all fixed and floating installations, mobile offshore units, barges and vessels, as well as on land based plants where petroleum activities are performed.

NOTE For the use of lifting equipment, reference is made to NORSOK R-003 and NORSOK R-005.

#### Normative and informative references

The following standards include provisions and guidelines which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions and guidelines of this NORSOK standard. Latest issue of the references shall be used unless otherwise agreed. Other recognized standards may be used provided it can be shown that they meet the requirements of the referenced standards.

#### 2.1 Normative references

CEN/TS 13001-3-1, Cranes - General design - Part 3-1: Limit states and proof of competence of steel structures CEN/TS 13001-3-2, Cranes - General design - Part 3-2: Limit states and proof of competence of wire ropes in reeving systems prCEN/TS 13001-3-3 1, Cranes - General design - Part 3-3: Limit states and proof of competence of wheel/rail contacts

FprCEN/TS 13001-3-5<sup>2</sup>, Cranes - General design - Part 3-5: Limit states and proof of competence of forged hooks

Directive 97/68/EC, Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 Decmber 1997on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to

measures against the emission of gaseous and particulate pollutants from internal combustion engines to be installed in non-road mobile machinery, amended by Directives 2001/63/EC, 2002/88/EC.

2004/26/EC and 2006/105/EC

DNV Standard for certification of lifting appliances, No. 2.22

Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - Part 6-4: Generic standards -IEC 61000-6-4,

Emission standard for industrial environments FEM 1.001, 3<sup>rd</sup> edition 1998, Rules for the design of hoisting appliances

IEC 60034. Rotating electrical machines

Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines - Part 1: IEC 60204-1,

General requirements

Safety of machinery – Electrical equipment of machines – Part 32: Requirements for hoisting machines IEC 60204-32,

IEC 60300-3-11, Dependability management - Part 3-11: Application guide - Reliability

centred maintenance

Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code) IEC 60529,

IEC 60812. Analysis techniques for system reliability - Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMÉA)

Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - Part 6-2: Generic standards -IEC 61000-6-2,

Immunity for industrial environments

IEC 61892 (all parts), Mobile and fixed offshore units - Electrical installations - (all parts) Symbols related to Life Saving Appliances and Arrangements IMO Resolution A.760 (18),

IMO Resolution MSC.82 (70), Amendments to Resolution A.760 (18)

ISO 898-1, Mechanical properties of fasteners made of carbon steel and alloy steel

-Part 1: Bolts, screws and studs with specified property classes - Coarse

thread and fine pitch thread

ISO 2631-1, Mechanical vibration and shock - Evaluation of human exposure to

whole-body vibration - Part 1: General requirements

Graphical symbols – Safety colours and safety signs – Part 1: Design ISO 3864-1,

principles for safety signs in workplaces and public areas

NORSOK standard Page 7 of 173

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> To be published.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> To be published

ISO 3864-2,

principles for product safety labels Graphical symbols – Safety colours and safety signs – Part 3: Design ISO 3864-3, principles for graphical symbols for use in safety signs ISO 6309, Fire protection - Safety signs Ergonomic principles in the design of work systems ISO 6385. ISO 9001, Quality management systems - Requirements ISO/TR 11688-1, Acoustics - Recommended practice for the design of low-noise machinery and equipment - Part 1: Planning Acoustics - Recommended practice for the design of low-noise ISO/TR 11688-2, machinery and equipment - Part 2: Introduction to the physics of lownoise design ISO 12100-1, Safety of machinery - Basic concepts, general principles for design -Part 1: Basic terminology, methodology Safety of machinery – Basic concepts, general principles for design – ISO 12100-2, Part 2: Technical principles Cranes - Condition monitoring - Part 1: General ISO 12482-1, Paints and varnishes – Corrosion protection of steel structures by ISO 12944-1, protective paint systems - Part 1: General introduction Cranes – Safety signs and hazard pictorials – General principles ISO 13200. Petroleum and natural gas industries - Control and mitigation of fires and ISO 13702, explosions on offshore production installations - Requirements and guidelines ISO 13849-1, Safety of machinery – Safety-related parts of control systems – Part 1: General principles for design Safety of machinery – Emergency stop – Principles for design Safety of machinery – Safety distances to prevent hazard zones being ISO 13850 ISO 13857, reached by upper and lower limbs ISO/TR 14121-2. Safety of machinery - Risk assessment - Part 2: Practical guidance and

Graphical symbols - Safety colours and safety signs - Part 2: Design

ISO 14121-1, Safety of machinery - Risk assessment - Part 1: Principles LSA Code, IMO SOLAS Life saving appliances (LSA) Code, 2003 Edition

NMD Regulation 4.July 2007, (concerning evacuation and life-saving appliances on mobile offshore

No.853,

NORSOK E-001.

Electrical systems (Edition 5, July 2007)

NORSOK M-501, Surface preparation and protective coating (Rev. 5. June 2004)

examples of methods

NORSOK N-004, Design of steel structures (Rev. 2.October 2004) NORSOK S-001, Technical safety (Edition 4, February 2008) NORSOK S-002, Working environment (Rev. 4. August 2004)

NORSOK Z-007. Mechanical completion and commissioning (Rev. 2.December 1999) NORSOK Z-008, Criticality analysis for maintenance purposes (Rev.2, Nov.2001) EN 349, Safety of machinery - Minimum gaps to avoid crushing of parts of the

human body

EN 614-1, Safety of machinery - Ergonomic design principles - Part 1:

Terminology and general principles

Safety of machinery – Ergonomic design principles – Part 2: Interactions EN 614-2,

between the design of machinery and work tasks

EN 818-2, Short link chain for lifting purposes - Safety - Part 2: Medium tolerance

chain for chain slings - Grade 8

Safety of machinery – Visual danger signals – General requirements, EN 842, design and testing

EN 894-1. Safety of machinery - Ergonomics requirements for the design of

and control actuators - Part 1: General principles for human interactions

with displays and control actuators

Safety of machinery - Ergonomics requirements for the design of EN 894-2,

and control actuators - Part 2: Displays

EN 894-3, Safety of machinery - Ergonomics requirements for the design of

and control actuators - Part 3: Control actuators

Safety of machinery - Guards - General requirements for the design EN 953,

and construction of fixed and movable guards

Safety of machinery - Safety requirements for fluid power systems and EN 982,

their components – Hydraulics

NORSOK standard Page 8 of 173

Page 9 of 173

EN 983,	Safety of machinery – Safety requirements for fluid power systems and
	their components – Pneumatics
EN 1037,	Safety of machinery – Prevention of unexpected start-up
EN 1127-1,	Explosive atmospheres – Explosion prevention and protection – Part 1:
	Basic concepts and methodology
EN 1492-1,	Flat woven webbing slings made of man-made fibres for general purpose
,	use
EN 1492-2,	Roundslings made of man-made fibres for general purpose use
EN 1492-4,	Lifting slings for general service made from natural and man-made fibre
LIV 1402 4,	ropes
EN 1677-1,	Components for slings – Safety – Part 1: Forged steel components,
LIN 1077-1,	Grade 8
EN 1677 0	Components for slings – Safety – Part 2: Forged steel lifting hooks with
EN 1677-2,	1 5 7 5
EN 4077 4	latch, Grade 8
EN 1677-4,	Components for slings – Safety – Part 4: Links, Grade 8
EN 1679-1,	Reciprocating internal combustion engines – Safety – Part 1:
	Compression ignition engines
EN 1834-1,	Reciprocating internal combustion engines – Safety requirements for
	design and construction of engines for use in potentially explosive
	atmospheres - Part 1: Group II engines for use in flammable gas and
	vapour atmospheres
EN 1999-1-1,	Eurocode 9: Design of aluminium structures - Part 1-1: General structural
· ·	rules
EN 12077-2,	Cranes safety – Requirements for health and safety – Part 2: Limiting
,	and indicating devices
EN 12198-2,	Safety of machinery - Assessment and reduction of risks arising from
211 12100 2,	radiation emitted by machinery – Part 2: Radiation emission
	measurement procedure
EN 12385-1,	Steel wire ropes – Safety – Part 1: General requirements
EN 12385-1, EN 12385-2,	Steel wire ropes – Safety – Part 1: General requirements  Steel wire ropes – Safety – Part 2: Definitions, designation and
EN 12303-2,	
EN 4000E 0	classification
EN 12385-3,	Steel wire ropes – Safety – Part 3: Information for use and maintenance
EN 12385-4,	Steel wire ropes – Safety – Part 4: Stranded ropes for general lifting
	applications
EN 12644-1,	Cranes – Information for use and testing – Part 1: Instructions
EN 12644-2,	Cranes – Information for use and testing – Part 2: Marking
EN 13001-1,	Cranes – General design – Part 1: General principles and requirements
EN 13001-2,	Cranes – General design – Part 2: Load effects
EN 13135-1,	Cranes – Safety – Design – Requirements for equipment – Part 1:
	Electrotechnical equipment
EN 13135-2,	Cranes - Equipment - Part 2: Non-electrotechnical equipment
EN 13155,	Cranes – Safety – Non-fixed load lifting attachments
EN 13411-3,	Terminations for steel wire ropes – Safety – Part 3: Ferrules and ferrule-
,	securing
EN 13411-4,	Terminations for steel wire ropes – Safety – Part 4: Metal and resin
LIV 10411 4,	socketing
EN 12/11-5	Terminations for steel wire ropes – Safety – Part 5: U-bolt wire rope grips
EN 13411-5,	Terminations for steel wire ropes – Safety – Part 5: 0-bolt wire rope grips  Terminations for steel wire ropes – Safety – Part 7: Symmetric wedge
EN 13411-7,	, , ,
EN 40.470	socket
EN 13478,	Safety of machinery - Fire prevention and protection
EN 13557,	Cranes – Controls and control stations
EN 13586,	Cranes – Access

#### 2.2 Informative references

DNV-OS-C501,

DNV Offshore Standard Composite Components Offshore Mooring Fibre Ropes Design of free fall lifeboats DNV-OS-E303, DNV OS-E406,

Verification of lifting appliances for the oil and gas industry Qualification Procedures for New Technology Fatigue Design of Offshore Structures DNV OSS-308,

DNV-RP-A203, DNV-RP-C203, NOKSOK R-003,

Safe use of lifting equipment

NORSOK standard

NORSOK R-005, Safe use of lifting and transport equipment in onshore petroleum plants

## 3 Terms, definitions and abbreviations

For the purposes of this NORSOK standard, the following terms, definitions and abbreviations apply.

#### 3.1 Terms and definitions

#### 3.1.1

#### activation system

interconnected parts necessary for powered or manual opening of the release mechanism, including the power supply and control system or manual control device

#### 3.1.2

#### agreed

term used when operating conditions or other design parameters are to be specified, and an agreement has to be reached

NOTE The parties of the agreement are the manufacturer of the equipment in question, and the company's technical responsible for operation of the installation in question. The term is used in different contexts, e.g. "unless otherwise agreed", "to be agreed", "as agreed" etc.

#### 3.1.3

## availability

availability of an item to be in a state to perform a required function under given conditions at a given instant of time, or in average over a given time interval, assuming that the required external resources are provided

#### 3.1.4

#### can

verbal form used for statements of possibility and capability, whether material, physical or casual

#### 3.1.5

# complex lifting appliances

power driven lifting appliances with high capacity and or high risks

NOTE Complex lifting appliances include, but are not limited to: offshore cranes, BOP cranes, drawworks, launching appliances for lifeboats, tower cranes, mobile cranes etc.

## 3.1.6

#### crane

lifting appliance whereby the load can be moved horizontally in one or more directions, in addition to the vertical movement

#### 3.1.7

#### design temperature

lowest mean daily air temperature for the area of operation, used for the selection of steel grades

## 3.1.8

## extended harm

damage to material assets or the environment in addition to harm (physical injury or damage to health)

# 3.1.9

#### fail-safe component

component where the predominant failure mode is known in advance, and which is used such that the effect of such failure is less critical

## 3.1.10

#### harm

physical injury or damage to health

NORSOK standard Page 10 of 173

#### 3.1.11

## inherently safe design measure

protective measure which either eliminates hazards or reduces the risks associated with hazards by changing the design or operating characteristics of the machine without the use of guards or protective devices

#### 3.1.12

#### installation

facility, plant and other equipment for petroleum activities (excluding ships that transport petroleum in bulk)

NOTE In this NORSOK standard, supply and standby boats are included in the definition of an installation. Examples of installations include fixed installations, FPSO vessels, rigs, barges, crane barges, service vessels, onshore plants etc.

#### 3.1.13

## launching and recovery appliances

lifting appliance for lifesaving equipment

#### 3.1.14

## lay down area

deck area for temporary storage of loads and equipment

#### 3.1.15

## lifesaving equipment

evacuation equipment and rescue equipment

#### 3.1.16

## lifting accessories

components or equipment used between the lifting appliance and the load or on the load to grip it, but which is not an integrated part of the lifting appliance

NOTE The term lifting accessories also cover lifting gear and loose gear.

## 3.1.17

## lifting appliance

machine or device used for vertical movement of a load, with or without horizontal movement

NOTE Include cranes, hoists, drilling hoisting equipment and launching and recovery appliances for life saving equipment, etc.

#### 3.1.18

# lifting equipment

common term for lifting appliances and lifting accessories

#### 3.1.19

#### lifting operation

all administrative and operational activities before, during and after a load is moved and until the lifting equipment is ready for a new load

# 3.1.20

#### liftina zone

space between the working area and the maximum lifting height

#### 3.1.21

#### LSA code

the IMO SOLAS Life saving appliances (LSA) Code, 2003 Edition, adopted by the Maritime Safety Committee (MSC) by resolution MSC.48(66) including the Revised recommendation on testing of life-saving appliances (resolution MSC.81(70)).

## 3.1.22

## main lay down area

deck area for temporary storage of loads and equipment during normal logistics operation of the installation

#### 3.1.23

## material handling

vertical and horizontal movement of a load

NOTE Material handling principles include all activities related to handling of goods and materials to and from and internally on the installation in all phases of its lifetime

#### 3.1.24

#### may

verbal form used to indicate a course of action permissible within the limits of this NORSOK standard

#### 3.1.25

#### means of connection

mechanical parts (e.g. hooks, links, rings, etc.) intended for connection of the life saving equipment to the launching and recovery appliance

NOTE The term "means of connection" covers both those parts which are integral to the life saving equipment and those parts which are integral to the lifting appliance.

#### 3.1.26

#### offshore crane

slewing crane used offshore for lifting operations with relative movements between the crane and the loading area

#### 3.1.27

#### personnel transfer carrier

basket suspended on cranes used for transfer of personnel between installations and ships

#### 3.1.28

## rated capacity (R)

maximum load that a lifting appliance is designed to lift under specific conditions

NOTE Rated capacity which corresponds to SWL used by International Labour Organisation (ILO).

## 3.1.29

## redundant component

component or components which continue to perform a failed component's purpose or function without affecting the safe operation

#### 3.1.30

#### release mechanism

parts of the means of connection that are moveable for the purpose of disconnecting the life saving equipment from its launching and recovery appliance

#### 3.1.31

## release system

combination of release mechanism and activation system

#### 3.1.32

#### reliability

ability of an item to perform a required function under given conditions for a given time interval

## 3.1.33

## reliable component

component which is capable of withstanding all load conditions, disturbances and stresses, with a low probability of failures or malfunctions

NORSOK standard Page 12 of 173

#### 3.1.34

#### rescue boat

boat designed to rescue persons in distress and to marshal survival craft.

NOTE Rescue boats are also commonly known as man over board (MOB) boats.

#### 3.1.35

## rescue equipment

rescue boats and personnel transfer carrier

#### 3.1.36

#### risk

combination of the probability of occurrence of harm and the severity of that harm

#### 3.1.37

## safe working load

#### **SWL**

maximum working load that the lifting equipment is designed to lift under specific conditions

NOTE Safe working load corresponds to the term rated capacity (R) used by many standards.

#### 3.1.38

#### shall

verbal form used to indicate requirements strictly to be followed in order to conform to this NORSOK standard and from which no deviation is permitted, unless accepted by all involved parties

#### 3.1.39

#### should

verbal form used to indicate that among several possibilities one is recommended as particularly suitable, without mentioning or excluding others, or that a certain course of action is preferred but not necessarily required

#### 3.1.40

#### significant wave height

average height of the highest third of prevailing waves, typically measured over a period of 3 h

## 3.1.41

## test

specific operation of lifting equipment, with or without a defined load, in order to determine whether the lifting equipment is suitable for use

#### 3.1.42

#### test load

specified load that the lifting equipment shall withstand within the manufacturer's specified limits without resulting in permanent deformation or other defects

NOTE Thereby confirming that the design, materials and manufacture comply with specification and statutory requirements.

#### 3.1.43

#### working area

vertical projection of all possible load positions

## 3.1.44

## working load limit

## WLL

maximum load that a lifting accessory is designed to lift at a specific configuration

## 3.2 Abbreviations

ALARP as low as reasonable practicable

ALS accident limite state

ATEX Atmosphères Explosibles
CE Conformité Européenne
EMC electromagnetic compatibility
EU European Union

FAT factory acceptance test

FMECA failure mode, effects and criticality analysis floating production, storage and offshore loading

HVAC heat, ventilation and air conditioning IMO International Maritime Organization

LS life saving NLS none life saving

NMD Norwegian Maritime Directorate RCM reliability centered maintenance

SLS serviceability limit state
SWL safe working load
UHF ultra high frequency
ULS ultimate limit state
VHF very high frequency
WLL working load limit

## 4 General safety requirements

## 4.1 Safety

Lifting equipment shall be designed, fabricated, tested, installed and maintained in such a way to reduce and minimise risks to humans, the environment and material assets.

All forms of energy including lifting and moving objects, represented or produced by lifting equipment, shall be controlled at any time in a safe manner.

The lifting equipment shall be designed such that no single technical failure results in an unacceptable risk.

## 4.2 Fitness for use

To minimise the risk of human error during all phases of use, simplicity, comprehensibility, maintainability and recognisability shall be emphasised when designing the lifting equipment.

The selection of type and specification of requirements for lifting equipment shall be based on the specific conditions at the workplace, the work itself, and any risk that may arise during the work.

## 4.3 Reliability and availability

Lifting equipment shall be designed and constructed using well-proven components and safety principles, to ensure reliability by withstanding

- · the operating stresses and loadings,
- the environmental influences,
- other relevant influences.

Lifting equipment shall be designed to ensure high availability and a minimum of "down-time" during the design life. In case of conflict between reliability, availability and/or safety, safety shall always prevail.

## 4.4 Principle of safety integration

The designer shall aim to eliminate any risk throughout the design lifetime of the lifting equipment, including the phases of transport, assembly, disabling, scrapping and dismantling.

In selecting the most appropriate methods, the manufacturer shall apply the following principles of safety integration in the order given:

- 1. Eliminate and reduce risks as far as possible by implementation of inherently safe design measures
- 2. Safeguarding and complementary protection measures in relation to risks that cannot be eliminated

NORSOK standard Page 14 of 173

3. Inform the users of the residual risks due to any shortcomings of the protection measures adopted, etc.

The basic terminology, methodology and technical principles are given in ISO 12100-1 and ISO 12100-2.

A documented risk assessment shall be worked out for all lifting appliances. The documentation of risk assessment shall demonstrate that the requirements for performing the risk assessment have been met, and that the results with respect to the acceptance criteria are fulfilled.

The risk assessment principles are given in ISO 14121-1 and ISO/TR 14121-2.

For complex lifting appliances the risk assessment shall be developed using methods on component level, e.g. FMECA as described in IEC 60812.

#### 4.5 Inherently safe design measures

Inherently safe design principles using reliable components shall be applied, see ISO 12100-2, clause 4. Dependent on the result of the risk assessment, fail-safe components or redundant components shall be used.

## 4.6 Safeguarding and complementary protective measures

Safeguarding and complementary protective measures shall be used to reduce or eliminate risks that can not be avoided or sufficiently limited by inherently safe design measures. Reference is made to ISO 12100-2, clause 5.

#### 4.7 Information for use

Information for use consists of communication links (e.g. text, words, signs, signals, symbols), or diagrams used separately or in a combination to convey information to the user. Information for use shall be supplied to further reduce risks that can not be avoided or sufficiently reduced by inherently safe design measures or safeguarding and complementary protective measures. The information for use shall be an integral part of supply of lifting equipment. Reference is made to ISO 12100-2, clause 6.

## 4.8 Strength proportion

The strength elements (structural and mechanical) of lifting equipment shall be designed such that the consequences of accidental overloading or unexpected load conditions which causes break down are known and minimised. This requirement does not apply for lifting accessories and portable units.

For cranes and launching appliances for life saving equipment this requirement should be fulfilled by ensuring that the first element to fail is not the foundation or any other element which is essential for the structural integrity of the entire crane or launching appliance.

#### 4.9 Maintenance

Lifting equipment shall be designed and arranged with means for efficient maintenance which ensure that the safe condition can be maintained for the specified design life.

A high level of maintainability shall be ensured, i.e. that the maintenance can easily be performed.

Facilities, including safe access, for maintenance, inspection and testing of essential elements and functions shall be provided.

The maintenance shall be planned with the following priority:

- 1. Safety
- 2. Reliability
- 3. Availability

A maintenance programme shall be provided for all lifting equipment and shall include all important maintenance tasks highlighted and recommended in the risk assessment, see 4.11.

For cranes reference is made to ISO 12482-1 and relevant parts of NORSOK Z-008, as applicable.

NORSOK standard Page 15 of 173

Page 16 of 173

If appropriate for complex lifting appliances, the maintenance programme shall be developed on component level, e.g. RCM as described in IEC 60300-3-11.

#### 4.10 Quality management system

The design, manufacturing and installation of lifting equipment shall be performed in accordance with a quality management system. The quality management system shall be in accordance with ISO 9001 or equivalent.

#### 4.11 Risk assessment

#### 4.11.1 General

Risk assessment shall be an integral part of the supply of lifting equipment. This implies that the knowledge and experience of the design, manufacturing, installation, transportation, assembly, dismantling, use, maintenance, incidents, accidents and harm, etc. related to lifting equipment shall be collected and used by the designer in order to assess the risks of lifting equipment during all phases.

Risk assessment shall be an iterative process, and repeated after the application of risk reduction measures until an acceptable level of safety is obtained, see principle of evaluation of risks stated in 4.12.

The risk assessment shall be carried out in accordance with ISO 14121-1.

NOTE ISO 14121-1 gives a more comprehensive description of risk assessment.

The relevant method of analysing hazards and estimating risk shall be selected depending on the lifting equipment characteristics and the type of risks that are dominating. Examples of such methods are described in ISO/TR 14121-2, Annex A.

The risk assessment shall be documented as stated in 4.13 and used as input for the maintenance planning, see 4.4.

#### 4.11.2 Determination of the limits

Determination of the limits of the lifting equipment is the first step in the risk assessment. Determination of the limits of the lifting equipment includes the technical properties and the performance of the lifting equipment, the personnel involved and the environmental constraints at all times.

Determination of limits of the lifting equipment shall include, but not be limited to

- · use limits including intended use and foreseeable misuse,
- different modes of operation and operator interventions,
- space limits,
- time limits,
- environmental limits.

#### 4.11.3 Identification of hazards

All hazards, hazardous situations and events shall be systematically identified. The phases shall include, but not be limited to

- construction.
- · assembly,
- FAT,
- transport,
- installation,
- · commissioning,
- use and foreseeable misuse,
- maintenance and testing,
- repair
- de-commissioning, dismantling and removal.

Further reference is ISO 14121-1.

NORSOK standard

#### 4.11.4 Estimation of risks

The risk is the combination of the probability of occurrence of harm and the severity of that harm.

The severity of harm to health can be estimated by taking into account

- a) the severity of injuries or damage:
  - 1) slight;
  - 2) serious:
  - 3) fatal.
- b) the extent of harm:
  - 1) one person;
  - 2) several persons.

Or, in case of an extended harm of an economic and/or environmental nature:

- a) the severity of the extended harm in terms of cost or environmental damage:
  - 1) minor;
  - 2) major;
  - 3) catastrophic.
- b) the extent of the extended harm in terms of cost or environmental damage:
  - 1) slight;
  - 2) moderate;
  - 3) extensive.

The probability of occurrence of any harm shall be estimated by taking into account the exposure to a hazard, occurrence of a hazardous event, and the possibilities of avoiding the harm.

The exposure to a hazard is influenced by

- a) need for access to the hazard zone,
- b) time spent in the hazard zone,
- c) number of persons exposed,
- d) frequency of access.

The occurrence of a hazardous event is influenced by

- a) reliability and other statistical data,
- b) incident and accident history,
- c) risk comparison.

The possibilities of avoiding the harm are influenced by

- a) personal skills,
- b) how quickly the hazardous situation is developing,
- c) awareness of risk,
- d) possibility of escape.

#### 4.11.5 Evaluation of risks

Risk evaluation shall be carried out to determine if risk reduction is required. If risk reduction is required, then appropriate risk reduction measures shall be selected and applied in accordance with 4.12, followed by repeated risk assessment. As a part of this iterative process, the designer shall check whether additional hazards are created or other risks are increased, when new measures are applied. If additional hazards do occur, they shall be added to the list of identified hazards, analysed and evaluated.

For standardised lifting equipment which is fully covered by the standards referred to herein, and which fully complies with the requirements stated, without additional hazards, the acceptance criteria in this NORSOK standard apply.

For non-standardised lifting equipment or standardised lifting equipment which partly or fully does not meet the requirements in this NORSOK standard, the remaining risks shall comply with the ALARP principle. The ALARP principle may be described as a reverse burden of proof, i.e. that risk reduction measures shall be implemented, if there is no evidence showing why not. The designer shall implement risk reduction measures unless it can be proven that there is a major inconsistency between cost and benefit.

#### 4.12 Risk reduction

Risk reduction shall comprise all possibilities to reduce the risk, including redesign, design modification, protective measures and information for use.

The designer shall select the most appropriate measure following the three step method below:

- Step 1. Inherently safe design measures
- Step 2. Safeguarding and possible complementary protective measures
- Step 3. Information for use covering residual risks

For reference, see 4.4.

#### 4.13 Documentation of risk assessment

Documentation of risk assessment shall demonstrate that the requirements for performing risk assessment have been met, and that the acceptance criteria are fulfilled.

The documentation shall include description of

- a) the lifting equipment for which the assessment was made (e.g. specifications, limits, intended use) and any relevant assumptions that have been made (e.g. loads, strengths, safety factors),
- b) the hazards and hazardous situations identified and the hazardous events considered in the
- c) the infessessiment, which risk assessment was based:
  - 1) the data used and the sources (e.g. accident histories, experiences gained from risk reduction applied to similar lifting equipment);
  - 2) the uncertainty associated with the data used and its impact on the risk assessment.
- d) the objectives to be achieved by protective measures,
- e) the protective measures implemented to eliminate identified hazards or to reduce risk (e.g. from standards or other requirements),
- f) residual risks associated with the lifting equipment,
- g) the result of the risk assessment,
- h) any forms completed during the assessment such as those given in ISO/TR 14121-2.

## 4.14 Verification

Lifting equipment shall be subjected to internal verification by the manufacturer to ensure compliance with requirements. Such internal verification shall be part of the technical construction file, see 5.25.

Before being taken into use, the lifting equipment shall be certified by an enterprise of competence, in accordance with NORSOK R-003 or NORSOK R-005.

Devices for the lifting of persons or of persons and goods involving a hazard of falling from a vertical height of more than 3 m, shall be subject to an involvement by a Notified Body, if the Machinery Directive is applicable.

The need, extent, method and independency of third party verification of the lifting equipment shall be agreed upon, dependent on the criticality of the lifting operations to be performed. DNV-OSS-308 may be used as a reference.

Verification reports shall form part of the final documentation and made available to the end user.

## 4.15 Qualification of new technology

The solutions described in this NORSOK standard are generally accepted as qualified at the time of publication of this NORSOK standard. Other solutions may also be applied, provided they are sufficiently qualified in accordance with recognised methods. The procedures and principles in DNV-RP-A203 may be used for qualification of new technology.

NORSOK standard Page 18 of 173

## 5 Common requirements

## 5.1 Suitability

#### 5.1.1 General

At the time of contract for the delivery of lifting equipment, parameters essential to ensuring that the lifting appliance is suitable and fit for use shall be agreed upon. Such design parameters shall include, but not be limited to

- · location of installation,
- · type of installation,
- · area of installation, arrangement and lay-out,
- environment, including temperatures, radiation, wind and other weather conditions, if relevant,
- criticality of the loads to be lifted, and the importance of the lifting operation,
- · rated capacity,
- · classification (utilization) (see also 5.8),
- · design life,
- noise and emissions,
- operational limitations,
- anti collision system,
- · fire and gas shut down philosophy,
- · automatic shut down criteria,
- other relevant health, safety and environment requirements.

#### 5.1.2 Lifting of personnel

Lifting equipment for the lifting of personnel shall be designed and equipped to minimise the risk for the personnel.

The structural and mechanical capacity of lifting equipment for the lifting of personnel shall be designed with a higher value risk coefficient, see 5.9 and the relevant annexes.

Lifting appliances for the lifting of personnel shall be equipped with additional safety features, see 5.9, 5.15 and the relevant annexes.

## 5.1.3 Mechanical interference

Lifting appliances shall be arranged and located with the aim not to interfere with other machinery or equipment.

Warning signals and anti-collision systems shall be provided on lifting appliances where mechanical interference with other machinery or equipment represents an unacceptable risk. If so, such equipment shall be specified by customer.

# 5.2 Materials and products

Materials and products used to construct lifting equipment, or products contained or created during the use of lifting equipment, shall not cause harm. The use of toxic or harmful liquids and substances shall be minimised.

#### 5.3 Fire and explosion

#### 5.3.1 Fire prevention and protection

Fire prevention and protection of lifting appliances shall be in accordance with NORSOK S-001 and EN 13478.

All equipment, electrical and non-electrical, installed and used in hazardous areas, shall comply with ATEX requirements (see EN 1127-1 as relevant of the hazardous area classification), i.e. Zone 0, Zone 1 or Zone 2.

Fire prevention and protection shall be marked in accordance with ISO 6309.

NORSOK standard Page 19 of 173

#### 5.3.2 Hazardous areas

Lifting equipment shall be compatible with the classification of the area in which it is installed and used.

Electrotechnical equipment mounted externally (exposed to potential explosive atmosphere) on lifting appliances located in non-hazardous areas, shall as a minimum be classified for use in hazardous area Zone 2, see NORSOK S-002. Crane boom movements may require Zone 1 equipment.

Area classification shall be in accordance with IEC 61892 (all parts).

#### 5.3.3 HVAC

HVAC in enclosed spaces of lifting appliances shall be in accordance with NORSOK S-001 and NORSOK S-002, if applicable.

#### 5.3.4 Fire and gas detection

Complex lifting appliances shall be equipped with fire and gas detection in accordance with NORSOK S-001 as applicable. Requirements additional to NORSOK S-001 shall be specified by customer.

## 5.3.5 Fire and gas alarms

Lifting appliances with control cabins shall be equipped with fire and gas alarms from the installation which enable the operator to terminate any lifting operations and bring the crane and the load to a safe position before activating a manual shut down. Reference is made to ISO 13702.

#### 5.3.6 Shut-down system

Lifting appliances which represent a hazard if operated in an explosive atmosphere, shall be equipped with an automatic shut-down system which is activated upon confirmed gas detection in the crane ventilation system or in the combustion air inlet, without delay, see NORSOK S-001.

Lifting appliances for life saving appliances and for the lifting of personnel may be specially considered.

## 5.4 Ergonomics

#### 5.4.1 General

Lifting equipment shall be designed in accordance with ergonomic principles in accordance with EN 614-1 and EN 614-2. In addition, ISO 6385 shall be used for guidance. Relevant requirements in NORSOK S-002 shall be complied with.

## 5.4.2 Operator position

Control stations for lifting appliances shall be designed and constructed to avoid any risk related to the health and safety of the operator, and such that the operator can safely supervise and control the lifting operations. Design of displays and control actuators shall be in accordance with EN 894-1, EN 894-2 and EN 894-3.

## 5.4.3 Escape and access

Lifting appliances shall be equipped with access and escape routes for personnel in accordance with EN 13586.

Lifting appliances shall be designed for safe access for operation, inspection and maintenance in accordance with NORSOK S-002.

Ladders, where there is a risk of falling, shall have self closing gates.

Offshore cranes for daily operation shall be equipped with a main access route and a separate alternative escape route between the entrance to the cabin/machinery house and the deck of the installation. The main access route shall have stairway ladders between different levels and be designed for the transport of supplies and spares, and in an emergency to facilitate transport of a stretcher, smokediving and firefighting equipment.

NORSOK standard Page 20 of 173

#### 5.4.4 Marking

Liting equipment shall be marked with identification number (tag. no.) and SWL/WLL). Cranes shall have additional marking in accordance with EN 12644-2. Safety colours and safety signs of lifting equipment shall be in accordance with ISO 3864-1, ISO 3864-2, ISO 3864-3 and ISO 13200.

#### 5.4.5 Illumination

A main electric lighting system shall provide illumination of every part of the lifting appliances normally accessible to operators and maintenance personnel, taking its supply from the main source of electrical power

An emergency lighting system shall provide illumination of the working area of every part of the lifting appliance normally accessible to operators and maintenance personnel, taking its supply from the emergency source of electrical power. Upon loss of the main power source, all emergency lighting shall automatically be supplied from the emergency source of power to ensure safe emergency operation and emergency escape.

Aircraft warning lights shall be installed on all lifting appliances representing a risk of obstruction for aircrafts. Illumination of working area shall be in accordance with NORSOK S-002, 5.6

#### 5.4.6 Prevention of unexpected start-up

Powered lifting appliances shall have devices preventing unexpected start-up in accordance with EN 1037.

Lifting appliances with enclosed cabins and/or remote operated control stations, shall be equipped with a switch/device with which the operator can disable the main control levers.

#### 5.4.7 Guards

Lifting appliances shall be equipped with fixed or moveable guards in accordance with EN 953 to protect persons from mechanical, thermal or other hazards as determined by the risk assessment or described in the annexes or references given in the annexes of this NORSOK standard.

#### 5.4.8 Crushing hazard

For both operation and regular maintenance activities, exposed areas of lifting equipment shall be designed with safety zones and distances to prevent personnel being harmed or injured by moving parts. Reference is made to ISO 13857 and EN 349.

#### 5.4.9 Falling objects

Any components fitted externally on lifting equipment and which may be subjected to vibrations or impacts from contact with other objects during operation, shall be analysed with respect to the hazard of falling objects. If such hazard is unacceptable, the components shall be secured with a double physical barrier against detachment.

NOTE An example of such mechanical component with a double physical barrier is a shackle pin secured in a shackle bow using a threaded nut locked by a split pin. Another example is an additional wire strap or a chain that is capable of catching and holding the falling object without damage.

Bolts used in lifting equipment shall normally be secured. Exceptions are bolts which represent no hazard.

The following methods/products are considered to be properly secured:

- controlled pretension to 70 % of yield;
- · nut with split-pin through the bolt;
- through metal nuts;
- locking plates.

Other well proven methods and designs may also be used.

#### 5.4.10 Mechanical vibration and shock

Lifting equipment shall be evaluated for mechanical vibration and shock to humans in accordance with NORSOK S-002 and ISO 2631-1.

#### 5.4.11 Handling and transport facilities

Lifting appliances shall be provided with facilities for handling and transport of major components, e.g. motors, gearboxes, pumps, sheaves, etc.

Detachable parts of lifting appliances weighing more than 25 kg shall be shaped to facilitate strapping or be equipped with attachment points, i.e. lifting lugs etc.

Reference is made to Annex B.

#### 5.4.12 Hot surfaces

The temperature of hot surfaces (e.g. exhaust pipes and channels) shall not exceed the ignition temperatures of flammable mediums that can escape upon accidental leaks.

Shields and guards intended to prevent skin contact shall be fitted, if required.

#### 5.5 Environmental conditions

#### 5.5.1 Temperatures

The design temperature for the lifting equipment, shall be agreed upon.

The corresponding minimum and maximum operating temperatures shall be determined by the manufacturer and shall be stated in the instructions for use.

Lifting equipment designed to operate in cold climate where snow and ice may occur, shall be designed for minimum snow and ice accumulation and the instruction for use shall state any operational limitations caused by snow and ice.

## 5.5.2 Atmosphere

Lifting equipment shall be designed for operation in a marine atmosphere with 100 % relative humidity, unless otherwise agreed.

## 5.5.3 Radiation

Lifting equipment intended to be used in areas where it may be exposed to heat radiation from flares or burner booms etc., shall be fitted with heat radiation shielding and any operational limitations shall be stated in the instructions for use.

Wire ropes, sheaves etc., which are exposed to heat radiation shall be fitted with facilities for lubrication. Replacement intervals shall be compatible with local radiation levels.

Lifting appliances shall be designed to limit radiation generation in accordance with EN 12198-2.

#### 5.5.4 Wind

Where applicable for lifting appliances, wind loads shall be specified for both in service and out of service. Reference is made to specific requirements given in annexes for the equipment groups.

Where no specific wind loads are specified, the requirements stated in EN 13001-2, 4.2.3.1 and 4.2.4.2, apply.

## 5.5.5 Waves, sea induced motions and inclinations

Where applicable, lifting equipment shall be designed for dynamic impacts, load offsets and inclinations of the installation (on which the lifting equipment is located), that may occur when such equipment is in or out of service.

Reference is made to requirements in annexes for the equipment groups.

NORSOK standard Page 22 of 173

## 5.6 Operational loads

Lifting equipment shall be designed for the in-service and out-of-service operational loads including the environmentally induced loads that may occur at/on the installation.

The operational limitations shall be stated in the instructions for use and in rated capacity information (e.g. load indicators, load tables, marking etc.) for the equipment.

#### 5.7 Strength and stability – structure and mechanisms

#### 5.7.1 General

The strength and stability of lifting equipment shall be calculated and documented in accordance with recognised international standards and design codes. If design standards are not specifically listed in the annexes, the method described in 5.7.2 to 5.7.6 shall be used.

## 5.7.2 Principles for proof of competence

Structural and mechanical strength of structural members and their connections, ropes, rope reeving components and load holding devices and other lifting components shall be documented by performing proof calculations in accordance with the principles of the limit state method described in EN 13001-1.

#### 5.7.3 Loads, load actions, load combinations and load effects

Loads shall be selected/calculated, amplified by dynamic coefficients, multiplied by partial safety factors and superimposed into load combinations in accordance with EN 13001-2 in order to decide their resulting load effects in terms of upper and lower extreme values of nominal stresses or inner forces. Load combinations given in the Annexes of this NORSOK standard shall be applied.

#### 5.7.4 Limit states and proof of competence

The following parts of the CEN/TS 13001-3 series shall be used for the selection of limit design stresses/forces and for the proof of static strength, fatigue strength and elastic stability. The technical specifications listed below also apply to the selection of materials:

- CEN/TS 13001-3-1 for structural members and welded, bolted and pinned connections;
- CEN/TS 13001-3-2 for wire ropes in reeving systems;
- prCEN/TS 13001-3-3 <sup>1)</sup> for wheel/rail contact;
- FprCEN/TS 13001-3-5 <sup>1)</sup> for forged hooks.

Bolts of class 12.9 shall not be used in load bearing connections.

For fatigue design of steel structures DNV RP-C203 may be used as a supplement.

#### 5.7.5 Mechanisms

Mechanisms are devices needed to start or stop a relative motion between two rigid parts of the lifting appliance, between the lifting appliance and its foundation, or between the lifting appliance and the lifted load. Thus motors, brakes, transmission systems and similar components are defined as mechanisms.

Strength of components that form parts of mechanisms shall be proved for loads defined in FEM 1.001, booklet 2, 2.5, applying the allowable stress method for the load combinations referenced in clause 5.7.3 of this standard. All partial safety factors shall be set to 1,0 for this purpose. If relevant (e.g. for lifting persons), the risk factor referenced in 5.9 shall be applied.

Components of mechanisms shall be checked for adequate safety against failure due to fracture, crippling, fatigue and excessive wear in accordance with FEM 1.001, booklet 4, 4.1.

Requirements given in EN 13135-2 shall also apply for certain components in mechanisms.

NORSOK standard Page 23 of 173

<sup>1)</sup> To be published.

<sup>1)</sup> To be published.

#### 5.7.6 Brakes

Unless otherwise stated in this NORSOK standard, brakes for hoisting mechanisms, travel mechanisms and winch driven luffing mechanisms shall, in addition to the requirements of EN 13135-2, comply with the design requirements given in FEM 1.001, booklet 7, 7.5.3.

#### 5.8 Strength and stability – classification

The service condition should be specified according to EN 13001-1 by the following classification:

Working cycles Classification of U
 Average displacement Classification of D
 Load spectrum Classification of Q
 Number of accelerations Classification of P

## 5.9 High risk applications

Lifting equipment for high risk operations such as the lifting of persons shall be designed using the risk coefficient stated in EN 13001-2 and safety measures as listed in EN 13135-2, 5.12.3.

As a general rule, the risk coefficient for lifting of persons by using lifting appliances shall be taken as  $y_0 = 1,5$ .

Other requirements for the high risk applications are stated in the annexes.

## 5.10 Power systems

#### 5.10.1 Electrical installations

Electrical powered lifting appliances shall be provided with relevant power supplies from the installation in accordance with NORSOK E-001.

Electrical installations of lifting appliances shall be in accordance with IEC 61892 (all parts).

#### 5.10.2 Electrical motors

Electrical motors installed in lifting appliances shall be in accordance with applicable parts of IEC 60034.

#### 5.10.3 Combustion engines

Combustion engines installed in lifting appliances shall be in accordance with EN 1679-1 and EN 1834-1.

Arrangement and exhaust of combustion engines shall be in accordance with the applicable area classification, see 5.3.

## 5.11 Electro technical equipment

Electro technical equipment of lifting equipment shall be in accordance with EN 13135-1, IEC 60204-1 and IEC 60204-32.

Minimum requirements for protection against water ingress and dust penetration to enclosures shall be as follows:

For indoor located equipment: Grade IP55 according to IEC 60529
 For outdoor located equipment: Grade IP66 according to IEC 60529

## 5.12 Non-electro technical equipment

Non-electro technical equipment of lifting equipment shall be in accordance with EN 13135-2.

# 5.13 Controls, control stations and control systems

Controls and control stations including any cableless controls, if relevant, shall be in accordance with EN 13557.

NORSOK standard Page 24 of 173

Control systems shall, as a general rule, be designed so that a fault in the control systems does not lead to a hazardous situation. Safety principles in IEC 60204-32 shall be applied.

Safety related parts of control systems for complex lifting appliances shall be in accordance with ISO 13849-1. Unless otherwise stated in this NORSOK standard or references made in the annexes, the required performance levels (PLr) for safety related parts of control systems shall be in accordance with Table 1. For definition of symbols, see ISO 13849-1.

Safety functions(hazard of malfunction) **Possibility** Frequency/tim Severity **PLr** avoiding e of exposure the hazard F1 **P2 Emergency stop** S2 d Limiters S2 F1 Р1 С

Table 1 — Safety functions - required performance levels

If the lifting appliance has safety related parts in control systems and safety functions not detailed in this NORSOK standard, the manufacturer shall determine the required performance level in accordance with ISO 13849-1, and demonstrate that the required performance level is achieved.

Programmable electronic systems shall follow the principles of ISO 17894.

#### 5.14 Limiting and indicating devices

Limiting and indicating devices on lifting appliances shall be in accordance with EN 12077-2.

Visual danger signals shall be in accordance with EN 842.

## 5.15 Emergency systems

## 5.15.1 Emergency stop

Power operated lifting appliances shall be equipped with an emergency stop in accordance with ISO 13850.

## 5.15.2 Emergency lowering system

Power operated lifting appliances for suspended loads shall be equipped with an emergency lowering system in order to avoid hazard of swinging loads in the event of loss of normal lowering function. This system is not required if an emergency operation system is provided in accordance with 5.15.3.

The emergency lowering system shall enable a controlled lowering of the load upon a power failure, landing the load safely.

The activation switches or handles shall be of hold-to-run type, and shall be clearly and permanently marked. The control station for emergency lowering shall be positioned in a place that gives the operator a clear view of the load and the lifting zone. The system shall be simple to operate and shall be available without undue delay in order to avoid unacceptable risk. A clear and unambiguous operation procedure for the system shall be included in the instructions for use and shall be permanently displayed at the control station.

## 5.15.3 Emergency operation

Offshore cranes on floating installations and lifting appliances for the lifting of persons shall be equipped with an emergency operation system. The system shall be able to move the load in any direction, in case of a main power failure or a control system failure, utilising a secondary independent power supply system and a secondary independent control system.

NORSOK standard Page 25 of 173

The system shall be simple to operate and shall be available without undue delay in order to avoid unacceptable risk. Unless specified otherwise in the annexes the minimum hoisting and lowering speeds for SWL shall be 10 % of the minimum required speeds. Only one function may be operated at a time.

The control devices shall be of hold-to-run type, and shall be clearly and permanently marked. A separate emergency stop shall be provided for the emergency operation system.

A clear and unambiguous operation procedure for the system shall be included in the instructions for use and shall be permanently displayed at the control station.

Specific requirements applicable to different types of lifting appliances are given in the relevant annexes.

#### 5.16 Communication

#### 5.16.1 Telephone

Cranes and lifting appliances with an enclosed control station shall be fitted with a permanently installed telephone communication system.

#### 5.16.2 UHF/VHF radio

Lifting appliances with an enclosed control station shall be fitted with permanently installed UHF and VHF radio facilities. It shall be possible for the crane driver to send/receive messages without removing the hands from the main control levers.

#### 5.16.3 Loudspeaker/alarm horn

Lifting appliances with an enclosed control station shall be fitted with permanently installed loudspeaker or alarm horn that can be operated by the crane driver without removing the hands from the main control levers.

#### 5.17 Pneumatics

Pneumatic systems and components of lifting equipment shall be in accordance with EN 983.

#### 5.18 Hydraulics

Hydraulic systems and components shall be in accordance with EN 982.

Pressure testing of each part of the system is specified in EN 982, 6.2. In addition, an extended hydrostatic pressure test of the assembled routing system (pipes, hoses and interconnection fittings) shall be carried out. The test pressure shall be 1,5 times the maximum working pressure, limited to 70 bar above the maximum working pressure.

The test pressure holding time shall be minimum 15 min and the oil temperature shall be minimum 7 °C.

## 5.19 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)

## 5.19.1 EMC immunity

EMC immunity of lifting appliances shall be in accordance with IEC 61000-6-2.

#### 5.19.2 EMC emission

EMC emission of lifting appliances shall be in accordance with IEC 61000-6-4.

## 5.20 Exhaust and noise emissions

Lifting appliances shall be designed for minimum noise emission according to ISO/TR 11688-1 and ISO/TR 11688-2. The A-weighted emission sound pressure level at the operator position with windows and doors closed and the HVAC turned on, if applicable, shall be less than 80 dB(A).

Exhaust from combustion engines used in lifting appliances shall not exceed the allowable emission limits given in Directive 97/68/EC as amended by Directive 2002/88/EC and Directive 2004/26/EC.

NORSOK standard Page 26 of 173

## 5.21 Utility systems

#### 5.21.1 Sight

Lifting appliances which have an enclosed control station shall have permanent means for window cleaning operated from inside the control station. In addition access means shall be provided for replacement of windshield wipers and manual cleaning of the windows from the outside.

#### 5.21.2 Ventilation

Indoor climate of lifting appliances shall be in accordance with NORSOK S-002, 5.7.

#### 5.21.3 Utility supplies

Lifting appliances shall have permanent arrangements for utility supplies (e.g. water, fuel, service air and electrical connections), as applicable. Details to be agreed upon.

Lifting appliances containing fuel, oil, grease etc. which represent a hazard to the environment, shall have permanent arrangements for enclosed drainage to tank.

## 5.22 Fabrication

Lifting appliances shall be fabricated in accordance with DNV Standard for certification of lifting appliances No. 2.22, Ch.2, Section 2 Materials and fabrication. This include e.g.

- · material selection,
- · material certificates.
- · material quality,
- · welding,
- forming (hot or cold),
- · inspection and testing.

#### 5.23 Installation and assembly

Lifting appliances shall be installed and assembled in accordance with DNV Standard for certification of lifting appliances No. 2.22, Ch.2, Section 2 Materials and fabrication, and relevant parts of NORSOK Z-007.

## 5.24 Corrosion protection

## 5.24.1 General

In selecting of materials and combination of materials used in lifting equipment, due consideration shall be given to environmental conditions with regards to risk of corrosion.

#### 5.24.2 Surface preparation and protective coating

Surface preparation and protective coating shall be in accordance with NORSOK M-501 and/or ISO 12944-1.

#### **5.24.3** Bolting

Corrosion resistant steel shall be used for external bolting of 10 mm diameter and smaller.

Larger bolts shall normally be hot-dip galvanised low alloy steel. If other qualities are used, special corrosion protection measures shall be applied, e.g. protected cups grease filled. Bolt assemblies that are essential to mechanical safety, shall be in accordance with ISO 898-1 and DNV Standard for certification of lifting appliances, No.2.22, Ch.2, Sec. 2, C200 and D400.

## 5.25 Technical construction file

## 5.25.1 General

A technical construction file shall be compiled by the manufacturer of lifting equipment.

The technical construction file shall address all requirements of this NORSOK standard, as applicable.

NORSOK standard Page 27 of 173

The technical construction file shall be prepared and presented in such detail that a third party is able to perform a verification of the product according to the requirements of this NORSOK standard, without supplementary information.

#### 5.25.2 Content

The technical file shall contain, as a minimum,

- unique identification details of the lifting equipment,
- design specification including design parameters,
- · risk assessments including resulting risk reduction measures and residual risk level,
- · applicable requirements for the lifting appliance,
- · standards and codes used,
- technical information, such as drawings, diagrams, calculations, test reports etc.,
- fabrication documentation, e.g. material certificates, fabrication procedures, welding documentation etc.,
- verification reports,
- · formal statements, declarations and certificates,
- instructions for use, including inspection and maintenance instructions, including wear and tear tolerances, non destructive examination (NDE) programmes, if applicable.

#### 5.25.3 Instruction for use

The instruction for use shall be made available to the end user.

The instruction for use of lifting appliances shall be in accordance with EN 12644-1.

The instruction for use of lifting accessories shall be in accordance with EN 13155, 7.1.

The maintenance instructions shall include a maintenance programme in accordance with 4.9.

The maintenance instructions shall include information on training of operators and maintenance personnel.

In the case of complex lifting appliances, the information on training of operators and maintenance personnel shall take into account the local conditions on/at the installation and its location.

NORSOK standard Page 28 of 173

# Annex A (Normative) Launching and recovery appliances for life saving equipment

## A.1 General (Group E)

#### A.1.1 Introduction

Some of the requirements given in this annex may require new and unproven technology. Unproven technical solutions shall be qualified in accordance with 4.1.15.

This annex contains technical requirements concerning lifting and lowering facilities of launching and recovery appliances for life saving equipment. This annex also covers suspension and hang-off points for lifesaving equipment and means of connection and release systems that are integral part of the life saving equipment.

Reference is also made to NORSOK S-001 and NORSOK S-002.

This annex does not cover outfitting and other technical facilities that are not related to launching, hang-off or recovery of the life saving equipment. For such equipment, reference is made to national and international regulations and equipment specific standards, e.g. DNV-OS-E406 for free fall lifeboats.

The supplier shall ensure that interfaces regarding operational and technical aspects between launching and recovery appliances, the installation and the lifesaving equipment are in compliance with this NORSOK standard.

The structural strength of launching and recovery appliances for lifesaving equipment shall comply with the requirements of this NORSOK standard. Dynamic coefficients and risk coefficients shall be applied in accordance with A.1.4, A.1.5 and A.1.6.

Launching and recovery appliances shall be in accordance with NMD Regulation 4 July 2007 No. 853 concerning evacuation and life-saving appliances on mobile offshore units, section 8. In addition, other specific sections from said NMD Regulations as referred to in this Annex, apply. Certain requirements from the LSA Code become applicable through references in the said NMD Regulation. In case of conflicting requirements in this NORSOK standard and said NMD Regulation, the following applies:

- the most stringent requirements for structural and mechanical strength apply;
- otherwise the requirements of this NORSOK standard apply.

For lifting accessories used in launching and recovery appliances for life saving equipment, reference is also made to Annex C.

For cranes used as launching and recovery appliances for life saving equipment, reference is also made to Annex G.

The requirement for efficient hand gear for recovery of lifeboats and rescue boats given in the LSA code, section 6.1.2.6, is not comprised by this NORSOK standard.

## A.1.2 Group overview

Table A.1 lists the groups of launching and recovery appliances covered by this Annex.

NORSOK standard Page 29 of 173

Table A.1 – Groups of launching and recovery appliances

Launchi	ng and reco	very applia	nces for life	saving equ	ipment									
Groups														
	Evacı	ıation equipr	nent		Rescue equipment									
E.1	E.2	E.3	E.4	E.5	E.6	E.7								
Free fall	Lifeboats	Escape	Rafts	Escape	Rescue	Personnel								
lifeboats	launched	chutes		lines	boats	transfer								
	by falls					carriers								
	and a													
	winch													

## A.1.3 Structural and mechanical strength, proof of competence

Structural and mechanical strength of launching and recovery appliances for life saving equipment, their structural members, machinery, ropes, rope reeving components and means of connection shall be documented by performing proof calculations in accordance with the principles of the limit state method as described in 5.7.

Structural and mechanical strength of the means of connection which are integral parts of the life saving equipment and their anchorage to the life saving equipment shall be documented in the same way.

The proof of competence shall be performed for the ULS and the ALS.

#### A.1.4 Loads and operational limitations

## A.1.4.1 Operational limitations

Launching and recovery appliances shall be designed to be installed, maintained, tested and used within the limitations described by the following sets of conditions:

- · NLS condition;
- · LS condition.

The NLS condition is applicable for operation during installation and maintenance.

The LS condition is applicable for operation during a real life saving situation, i.e. evacuation or rescue.

The conditions are defined by

- environmental conditions in terms of max wind speed and max significant wave height,
- · operational situations as sidelead and offlead,
- max static angle of heel for the installation in the damaged stability condition.

The NLS and LS conditions are defined in Table A.2.

The design temperature  $T_{D}$  shall be taken as -20  $^{\circ}\text{C},$  unless otherwise agreed.

It is the responsibility of the supplier of the life saving equipment to ensure and document that safe operation can be achieved in the specified operational conditions.

NORSOK standard Page 30 of 173

NORSOK standard R-002 Draft Edition 2, June 2011

Table A.2 - NLS and LS conditions

Equip- ment group		NLS condition	1	LS condition								
	Maximum wind speed <sup>a</sup>	Maximum significant wave height, Hs	Maximum offlead/ sidelead angle in any direction	Maximum wind speed <sup>a</sup>	Maximum significant wave height, Hs	Maximum angle of heel in any direction <sup>b</sup>						
	(m/s)	(m)	(°)	(m/s)	(m)	(°)						
E.1	10	1,0	10	36	16	17						
E.2	10	1,0	10	36	16	17						
E.3	10	1,0	10	36	16	17						
E.4	10	1,0	10	36	16	17						
E.5	15	N/A	10	36	N/A	17						
E.6	10	3,0	10	17	6,0	17						
E.7	10	2,0	10	36	16	17						

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>a</sup> Mean wind velocity,  $v_m(z)$  at 10 m height above sea (10 min), see EN 13001-2, 4.2.3.1. Mean wind velocity shall be recalculated into 3 s gust winds at the actual height of the launching appliance above sea level.

Example: 17 m/s (10 min) corresponds to ~25 m/s (3 s gust wind).

## A.1.4.2 Rated capacity

Unless otherwise stated in the subsequent clauses of this Annex, the rated capacity for launching and recovery appliances shall be taken as the gross mass of a fully equipped life saving equipment when boarded with its full complements of persons, i.e. crew and passengers.

For the purpose of calculating the rated capacity of launching and recovery appliances, the weight of each person in the life saving equipment (e.g. life boat, rescue boat) shall be set to 90 kg.

#### A.1.4.3 Loads and load combinations

Structural and mechanical strength of launching and recovery appliances shall be proved for loads and load combinations. The following tables shall be used instead of Table 10 in EN 13001-2:

Group E.1: Tables A.3 and Table A.4

Group E.2: Table A.5Group E.6: Table A.9

Loads for the ULS shall be determined, based on the NLS and LS conditions.

NORSOK standard Page 31 of 173

The angle of heel for the damaged host facility shall be set to 17° unless other host facility specific values are known.

Loads for the ALS shall be determined, based on extreme wind conditions, extreme wave conditions or earthquake. Extreme wind and wave conditions are conditions with mean wind velocity (10 min at 10 m height above sea) or wave height corresponding to 10 000 year return period. Extreme weather conditions are to be determined for the particular installation in accordance with NORSOK N-002.

ULS loads are to be determined for load combinations A, B and C with partial safety factors  $(\gamma_p)$  as defined in EN 13001-2.

ALS loads are complementary to the requirements in EN 13001-2. The ALS loads are entered into load combinations C2 and C8 in the above mentioned tables, with partial safety factors set to  $\gamma_p = 1.0$ 

NORSOK standard Page 32 of 173

Table A.3 – Load combinations for Group E.1 – Launching appliances for free fall lifeboats Lifeboat in stowed position and launched by primary means of launching

Categories	Lo	ads	Referei	nce	Load	comb	ination	ıs A	Lo	mbina	tions	В	Load combinations C						
of loads			EN 13001- 2	NOR SOK R-002	Partial safety factors	ety	A2	A4	Parti al safet y facto rs	B1	B2	B4	B5	Parti al safet y facto rs	C2	C3	C7	C8	
									<b>Y</b> p					<b>Y</b> p					
Regular	Gravitation acceleration,	Mass of the launching appliance	4.2.2.1	-	*)	1	Φ <sub>1</sub>	-	*)	1	Φ <sub>1</sub>	-	-	*)	1	1	1	1	
	Impacts	Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1)	4.2.2.2	-	1,34	1	Φ <sub>3</sub>	-	1,22	1	Φ <sub>3</sub>	-	-	1,1	1	-	1	1	
		Masses of launching appliance and hoist load travelling on uneven surface	4.2.2.3	-	1,22	-	-	Φ <sub>4</sub>	1,16	-	-	Φ <sub>4</sub>	Φ <sub>4</sub>	-	-	-	-		
	Acceleration from drives other than hoist drive	Masses of the launching appliance and hoist load	4.2.2.4	-	1,34	-	-	Φ <sub>5</sub>	1,22			$\Phi_5$	-	-	-	-	-	-	
	Displacements	3	4.2.2.5	-	**)	1	1	1	**)	1	1	1	1	**)	1	1	1	1	

NORSOK standard Page 33 of 164

Categories of loads	s Loads		Refer	ence	Load	combi	nation	s A	Lo	tions	3	Load combinations C						
or loads			EN 13001- 2	NOR SOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	A2	A4	Parti al safet y facto rs	B1	B2	B4	B5	Parti al safet y facto rs	C2	C3	C7	C8
									Υp					<b>Y</b> p				
Occasional	Environment al actions	Wind loads	4.2.3.1	Table A.2	-	-	-	-	1,22	1	1	1	1	1,16	-	1	-	-
		Snow and ice loads	4.2.3.2	-	-	-	-	-	1,22	1	1	1	1	-	-	-	-	-
		Temperature variations	4.2.3.3	-	-	-	-	-	1,16	1	1	1	1	1,05	1	-	-	-
	Skewing		4.2.3.4	-	-	-	-	-	1,16	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-
Exceptional	Extreme wind position	- stowed	4.2.4.2	A.1.4.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,0	1	-	-	-
	Static test load	t	-	A.1.14	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	-	1	-	-
	Test load for remechanism	elease	-	A.1.5.5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	-	-	$\Phi_5$ (NOTE 2)	-
	Excitation of the (NOTE 3)	ne foundation	4.2.4.8	A.1.4.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,0	-	-	-	1
Risk coefficie	ent v.		4.3.2	5.9	-		1,5		_		1	.5		_			1,0	

NORSOK standard Page 34 of 164

Categories of loads	Loads	Referer	Reference			Load combinations A				mbina	tions	В	Load combinations C					
of loads		EN 13001- 2	NOR SOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	A2	A4	Parti al safet y facto rs	B1	B2	B4	B5	Parti al safet y facto rs	C2	C3	C7	C8	
								Υp					<b>Y</b> p					

- NOTE 1 Mass of the hoist load shall be taken as rated capacity from A.2.3 for load combinations A1, A2, A4, B2, B2, B4 and B5. For lad combination C2, the mass of hoist load may be taken as mass of empty lifeboat. For load combination C7, the mass of hoist load shall be taken as the test load for release mechanism.
- NOTE 2  $\Phi_5 = \Phi_{2,C7} 1$ .
- NOTE 3 Accelerations resulting from earthquake or extreme wave with wave height corresponding to 10 000 year return period, whichever gives the highest accelerations, must be applied to both mass of the hoist load and mass of the launching appliance in all degrees of freedom for the particular installation.

#### Key

- A1: ULS: Suspended lifeboat with no wind or other environmental loads. This load combination shall be applied for lifeboat in stowed position suspended from each mechanism, i.e. primary means of launching, secondary means of launching, means of retrieval and hang-off relief arrangement. For skidding arrangements, this load combination shall also be applied in the most unfavourable position at the skidding track during launching.
- A2: ULS: Sudden release of load (drop of lifeboat) as result of activating the release function of the primary means of launching. Φ<sub>3</sub> = -1,0 to be applied for calculating the peak reaction load effects in the main structure caused by drop of lifeboat.
- A4: ULS: Travelling on an uneven surface or track with no wind or other environmental loads, if part of the launching sequence for primary means of launching.
- B1: ULS: Lifeboat in stowed position suspended from primary means of launching in the LS condition. For skidding arrangements, this load combination shall also be applied in the most unfavourable position at the skidding track during launching. For means of retrieval, secondary means of launching and hang-off relief arrangement, this load combination shall be applied for stowed position in the NLS condition.
- B2: ULS: Sudden release of load (drop of lifeboat) as result of activating the release function of the primary means of launching in the LS condition. Φ<sub>3</sub> = -1,0 to be applied for calculating the peak reaction load effects in the main structure caused by drop of lifeboat.

NORSOK standard Page 35 of 164

Categories of loads	Loads	Referer	Reference			Load combinations A				mbina	tions	В	Load combinations C					
or loads		EN 13001- 2	NOR SOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	A2	A4	Parti al safet y facto rs	B1	B2	B4	B5	Parti al safet y facto rs	C2	C3	C7	C8	
								Υp					Υp					

- B4: ULS: Travelling on an uneven surface or track in the LS condition, if part of the launching sequence for primary means of launching.
- B5: ULS: Travelling on an uneven surface and skewing in the LS condition, if part of the launching sequence for primary means of launching.
- C2: ALS: Lifeboat in the stowed position suspended in primary means of launching in combination with loads from extreme wind conditions corresponding to wind speed with 10000 year return period.
- C3: ULS: Static overload testing in NLS conditions with test load of 2,2 times the rated load for the particular mechanism (see A.2.3), i.e. primary means of launching and hang-off relief arrangement.
- C7: ULS: Dynamic impact in hang-off relief arrangement in case of testing the function of release mechanism for primary or secondary means of launching by dropping the lifeboat into the hang-off relief arrangement.
- C8: ALS: Lifeboat in the stowed position suspended in primary means of launching in combination with loads due to external excitation of the foundation.

Table A.4 – Load combinations for Group E.1 – Launching appliances for free fall lifeboats Lowering by secondary means of launching and hoisting by means of retrieval

Categories of loads	L	oads	Refe	rence	Load co	ombina A	ations	Load	d combin	ations B	Load cor	mbination	s C
			EN 13001-2	NORSOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	А3	Partial safety factors	B1	В3	Partial safety factors	C3	C6
					Υp			<b>Y</b> p			$\gamma_{\text{P}}$		
Regular	Gravitation acceleration,	Mass of the launching appliance	4.2.2.1	-	*)	Φ <sub>1</sub>	1	*)	Φ <sub>1</sub>	1	*)	Φ <sub>1</sub>	1
	Impacts	Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1)	-	A.1.5.3	1,34	Φ <sub>2</sub>	1	1,22	Φ <sub>2</sub>	1	1,1	-	1
	Inertia forces acceleration f	due to rom hoist drives	4.2.2.4	-	1,34	-	$\Phi_5$	1,22	-	$\Phi_5$	-	-	-
	Displacement	s	4.2.2.5	-	**)	1	1	**)	1	1	**)	1	1
Occasional	Environme ntal actions	Wind loads	4.2.3.1	Table A.2	-	-	-	1,22	1	1	1,16	1	-
		Snow and ice loads	4.2.3.2	-	-	-	-	1,22	1	1	-	-	-
		Temperature variations	4.2.3.3	-	-	-	-	1,16	1	1	-	-	-
Exceptional	Dynamic test	load	4.2.4.3	A.1.14	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	$\Phi_6$	-
												(NOTE 2)	

NORSOK standard Page 37 of 164

Categories of loads	Loads	Refe	rence	Load co	ombina A	ations	Load	d combi	nations B	Load cor	mbinatio	ns C
		EN 13001-2	NORSOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	A3	Partial safety factors	B1	В3	Partial safety factors	C3	C6
				<b>Y</b> p			<b>γ</b> p			$Y_{P}$		
	Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1) during emergency braking.		A.1.5.4	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	-	Φ <sub>5</sub> (NOTE 4)
Risk coefficier	nt, $\gamma_n$ (NOTE 3)	4.3.2	5.9	-	1	,5	-		1,5	-	1,0	1,5

<sup>\*)</sup> See EN 13001-2, Table 7

NOTE 1 Mass of the hoist load shall be taken as rated capacity from A.2.3 for load combinations A1, A3, B1 and B3. For load combination C6, mass of the hoist load shall be taken as the test load of 1,1 times the rated capacity.

NOTE 2 For the dynamic load test, coefficient  $\Phi_6$  is a function of  $\Phi_{2.A1}$ .

NOTE 3 The risk coefficient of 1,5 is only applicable if lifting or lowering persons is part of the intended use, see A.2.4.2.1 and A.2.4.3, and when performing proof of competence with rated capacity for lifting persons, see A.2.3. When performing proof of competence with rated capacity (without persons), the risk coefficient may be set to 1,0.

NOTE 4  $\Phi_5 = \Phi_{2.C6}$  -1

#### Key

A1: ULS: Pick-up of lifeboat from sea with means of retrieval in NLS conditions without environmental actions from wind, snow/ice or temperature variations. The effect of waves shall be taken into account.

A3: ULS: Acceleration of hanging lifeboat at start of descent or start of hoisting in NLS conditions without environmental actions from wind, snow/ice or temperature variations.

NORSOK standard Page 38 of 164

<sup>\*\*)</sup> See EN 13001-2, 4.3.5

Categories of loads	Loads	Refe	rence	Load co	mbina A	ations	Load	d combir	ations B	Load cor	nbination	s C
		EN 13001-2	NORSOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	А3	Partial safety factors	B1	В3	Partial safety factors	C3	C6
				<b>Υ</b> p			<b>Y</b> ρ			$\mathbf{Y}_{P}$		

B1: ULS: Pick-up of lifeboat from sea in NLS conditions in combination with environmental actions.

B3: ULS: Acceleration of hanging lifeboat at start of descent or start of hoisting in NLS conditions with environmental actions from wind, snow/ice and temperature variations.

C3: ULS: Dynamic overload testing in NLS conditions with a test load equal to 1,1 times the rated capacity for the particular mechanism (see A.2.3).

C6: ULS: Secondary means of launching with a test load equal to 1,1 times the rated capacity (with and without persons, see A.2.3) in combination with loads caused by emergency braking during lowering at full speed.

Table A.5 – Load combinations for Group E.2 – Launching appliances for lifeboats launched by falls and a winch

Lo	ads	Refer	ence		Loa	ıd		ı	Load					Load			
				CO	mbina	tions /	A	comb	inatior	ns B			com	binatio	ns C		
		EN 13001- 2	NOR SOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	A1 1	А3	Partial safety factors	B1	В3	Partial safety factors	C1	C2	C3	C6	C7	C8
				Υp				<b>Y</b> p			Υp						
acceleration,	launching	4.2.2.1	-	*)	Φ <sub>1</sub>	1	1	*)	Φ1	1	*)	Φ <sub>1</sub>	1	Φ <sub>1</sub>	1	1	1
	hoist load	-	A.1.5.3	1,34	Φ <sub>2</sub>	1	1	1,22	Φ <sub>2</sub>	1	1,1	-	1	-	1	1	1
		4.2.2.4	-	1,34	-	-	Φ <sub>5</sub>	1,22	-	Φ <sub>5</sub>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Displacements		4.2.2.5		**)	1	1	1	**)	1	1	**)	1	1	1	1	1	1
Environmenta I actions	Wind loads	4.2.3.1	Table A.2	-	-	-	-	1,22	1	1	1,16	-	-	1	-	-	-
	Snow and ice loads	4.2.3.2	-	-	-	-	-	1,22	1	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Temperature variations	4.2.3.3	-	-	-	-	-	1,16	1	1	1,05	-	1	-	-	-	-
Re-entry during lowering	Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1)	-	A.1.5.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	Φ <sub>2</sub>	-	-	-	-	-
	Gravitation acceleration, Impacts Inertia forces dacceleration from Displacements Environmental actions Re-entry during	acceleration, launching appliance Impacts  Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1)  Inertia forces due to acceleration from hoist drives  Displacements  Environmenta   Wind loads   lactions  Snow and ice loads  Temperature variations  Re-entry   Mass of the during hoist load	Gravitation acceleration, Impacts  Mass of the launching appliance Impacts  Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1)  Inertia forces due to acceleration from hoist drives  Displacements  Environmenta I actions  Snow and ice loads  Temperature variations  Re-entry during  Mass of the hoist load  A.2.2.1  4.2.2.4  4.2.2.5	Gravitation acceleration, Impacts  Mass of the launching appliance Impacts  Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1)  Inertia forces due to acceleration from hoist drives  Displacements  Environmenta I actions  Vind loads I actions  Vind loads I actions  Feentry Mass of the variations  Mass of the 1 - A.1.5.3  A.1.5.3  A.2.2.5  A.2.3.1  Table A.2  A.2.3.2  - A.2.3.3  - A.2.3.3  - A.2.3.3  Re-entry Mass of the hoist load	EN NOR SOK safety factors    Figure   F	$\begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	EN 13001- 2 Properties         NOR SOK 2 Partial safety safety factors         A1 A1 A1 A1 SAFETY S		EN   NOR SOK   Safety   R-002   Factors   R-002   R-002   R-002   Factors   R-002   R-002	Figure   F	Re-entry   Mass of the lactions   Re-entry during   Re-entry mass   Re-entry	Final Fina	Second   S	EN 13001- 2   Partial 13001- 2   Partial 2   A1 2   A1 3   A1 3   Partial 2   A1 2	Combination	Solitor   Partial Fraction   Partial Solitor   Partial Solitor   Partial Solitor   Partial Solitor   Partial Solitor   Partial Solitor   Partial Safety Factors   Partial Solitor   Part	Combination   Comparison   Co

NORSOK standard Page 40 of 164

Categories of loads	Loads	Refere	ence		Loa	ad		ı	Load					Load			
				COI	mbina	tions /	A	comb	inatior	ıs B			com	binatio	ns C		
		EN 13001- 2	NOR SOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	A1 1	A3	Partial safety factors	B1	В3	Partial safety factors	C1	C2	C3	C6	C7	C8
				Υp				Υp			Υp						
	Extreme wind – stowed position	4.2.4.2	A.1.4.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,0	-	1	-	-	-	-
	Test loads	4.2.4.3	A.1.14	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	-	-	Φ <sub>6</sub> (NOT E 2)	-	-	-
	Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1) during emergency braking.	-	A.1.5.4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	-	-	-	Φ <sub>5</sub> (NOT E 5)	-	-
	Test load for release		A.1.5.5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	-	-	-	-	$\Phi_5$	-
	mechanism															(NOT E 3)	
	Excitation of the foundation (NOTE 4)	4.2.4.8	A.1.4.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,0	-	-	-	-	-	1
Risk coeffici	ent, $\gamma_n$	4.3.2	5.9	-		1,5		-	1	,5	-	1,0	1,0	1,0	1,5	1,0	1,0
*) See EN 1	3001-2, Table 7	**) See EN 1	3001-2, 4.3	3.5													

NOTE 1 Mass of the hoist load is to be taken as the rated capacity as defined in A.1.4.2 for load combinations A1, A3, B1, B3 and C1. For load combination A11, the mass of hoist load may be taken ass the mass of empty lifeboat with crew of 3 persons. For load combinations C2 and C8, the mass of hoist load may be taken as mass of empty lifeboat. For load combinations C3, C6 and C7, the mass of the hoist load shall be taken as the test load of 1,1 times the rated capacity as defined in A.1.4.2.

NOTE 2 For the dynamic load test, coefficient  $\Phi_6$  is a function of  $\Phi_{2.A1}$ . For static load test,  $\Phi_6 = 1.0$ 

Categories of loads	Loads	Reference	9		Loa	d		L	_oad					Load			
				cor	nbina	tions /	A	combi	nation	s B			com	binatio	ns C		
		EN 13001- 2	NOR SOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	A1 1	А3	Partial safety factors	B1	B3	Partial safety factors	C1	C2	C3	C6	C7	C8
				Υp				Υp			<b>γ</b> <sub>p</sub>						

NOTE 3  $\Phi_5 = \Phi_{2.C7}$  -1.

NOTE 4 Accelerations resulting from earthquake or extreme wave with wave height corresponding to 10 000 year return period, whichever gives the highest accelerations, must be applied to both mass of the hoist load and mass of the launching appliance in all degrees of freedom for the particular installation.

NOTE 5  $\Phi_5 = \Phi_{2.C6}$  -1

#### Key

- A1: ULS: Pick-up of lifeboat from sea in NLS conditions without environmental actions from wind, snow/ice or temperature variations. The effect of waves shall be taken into account
- A11: ULS: Lifeboat suspended from hang-off relief arrangement.
- A3: ULS: Acceleration of hanging lifeboat at start of descent or start of hoisting in NLS conditions without environmental actions from wind, snow/ice or temperature variations.
- B1: ULS: Pick-up of lifeboat from sea in NLS conditions in combination with environmental actions.
- B3: ULS: Acceleration of hanging lifeboat at start of descent or start of hoisting in NLS conditions with environmental actions
- C1: ULS: Re-entry during launching in LS conditions.
- C2: ALS: Lifeboat in the stowed position ready for launching in combination with loads from extreme wind conditions corresponding to wind speed with 10000 year return period.

NORSOK standard Page 42 of 164

#### NORSOK standard R-002

#### Draft Edition 2, June 2011

Categories of loads	Loads	Referen	се		Loa	ıd		I	Load					Load			
				COI	nbina	tions /	A	combi	ination	ıs B			com	binatior	ıs C		
		EN 13001- 2	NOR SOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	A1 1	А3	Partial safety factors	B1	В3	Partial safety factors	C1	C2	C3	C6	C7	C8
				Υp				Υp			<b>Y</b> p						

- C3: ULS: Static and dynamic load testing in NLS conditions.
- C6: ULS: Launching appliance with a test load equal to 1,1 times the rated capacity (ref. A.1.4.2) in combination with loads caused by emergency braking during lowering at full speed in mode for maintenance and installation.
- C7: ULS: Dynamic impact in hang-off relief arrangement in case of testing the function of release mechanism by dropping the lifeboat into the hang-off relief arrangement.
- C8: ALS: Launching appliance with hoist load in combination with loads due to external excitation of the foundation

At the time of publication of this NORSOK standard, hoisting/lowering is the only motion of a typical launching and recovery appliance for lifeboats launched by falls and a winch. Table A.5 summarises the load combinations to be analysed for such appliances. A more detailed analysis of load combinations is needed for launching and recovery appliances with other movements. For such appliances, reference is made to EN 13001-2, Table 10.

Table A.6 Group E.3

TO BE DEVELOPED

Table A.7 Group E.4

TO BE DEVELOPED

Table A.8 Group E.5

TO BE DEVELOPED

Table A.9 – Load combinations for Group E.6 – Launching appliances for rescue boats

Categories of loads	I	_oads	Ref	erence	Load	combi	ination	s A	Load co	nbinat B	ions		Load	comb	ination	s C	
			EN 13001-2	NORSOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	A11	А3	Partial safety factors	B1	В3	Partial safety factors	C1	C2	C3	C6	C8
					<b>Y</b> p				<b>Y</b> p			<b>Y</b> p					
Regular	Gravitation acceleration	Mass of the launching appliance	4.2.2.1	-	*)	Φ <sub>1</sub>	1	1	*)	Φ <sub>1</sub>	1	*)	Φ <sub>1</sub>	1	Φ <sub>1</sub>	1	1
	Impacts	Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1)	-	A.1.5.3	1,34	Φ <sub>2</sub>	1	1	1,22	Φ <sub>2</sub>	1	1,1	-	1	-	1	1
	Inertia forces acceleration f	due to rom hoist drives	4.2.2.4	-	1,34	-	-	Φ <sub>5</sub>	1,22	-	Φ <sub>5</sub>	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Displacement	S	4.2.2.5		**)	1	1	1	**)	1	1	**)	1	1	1	1	1
Occasional	Environment	Wind loads	4.2.3.1	Table A.2	-	-	-	-	1,22	1	1	1,16	-	-	1	-	-
	al actions	Snow and ice loads	4.2.3.2	-	-	-	-	-	1,22	1	1	-	-	-	-	-	-
		Temperature variations	4.2.3.3	-	-	-	-	-	1,16	1	1	1,05	-	1	-	-	-
Exceptional	Re-entry during hoisting	Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1)	-	A.1.5.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	Φ <sub>2</sub>	-	-	-	-
	Extreme wind	- stowed position	4.2.4.2	A.1.4.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,0	-	1	-	-	-
	Test loads		4.2.4.3	A1.15	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	-	-	Φ <sub>6</sub> (NO	-	-

NORSOK standard Page 45 of 164

Categories of loads	Loads	Refe	erence	Load	comb	ination	s A	Load co	mbina B	tions		Load	comb	ination	s C	
		EN	NORSOK	Partial	A1	A11	АЗ	Partial	B1	ВЗ	Partial	C1	C2	C3	C6	C8
		13001-2	R-002	safety factors				safety factors			safety factors					
				Υp				Ϋ́ρ			Υp			TE		
														2)		
	Mass of the hoist load (NOTE 1) during emergency braking.	-	A.1.5.4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,1	-	-	-	Φ <sub>5</sub> (NOT E 4)	-
	Excitation of the foundation (NOTE 3)	4.2.4.8	A.1.4.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,0	-	-	-	-	1
Risk coefficie	nt, $\gamma_n$	4.3.2	5.9	-		1,5		-	1	,5	-	1,0	1,0	1,0	1,5	1,0
*) See NS-EN	1 13001-2, Table 7 **)	See EN 13	001-2, 4.3.5													

NOTE 1 Mass of the hoist load is to be taken as the rated capacity as defined in A.1.4.2 for load combinations A1, A11, A3, B1, B3 and C1. For load combination C6, mass of the hoist load shall be taken as the test load of 1,1 times the rated capacity. For load combinations C3, mass of the hoist load shall be taken as the test load equal to 2,2 times the rated capacity for static test of the winch and 1,1 times the rated capacity for dynamic test of the winch. For load combinations C2 and C8, mass of the hoist load may be taken as mass of the empty rescue boat.

NOTE 2 For the dynamic load test, coefficient  $\Phi_6$  is a function of  $\Phi_{2.A1}$ . For static load test,  $\Phi_6 = 1.0$ 

NOTE 3 Accelerations resulting from earthquake or extreme wave with wave height corresponding to 10 000 year return period, whichever gives the highest accelerations, must be applied to both mass of the hoist load and mass of the launching appliance in all degrees of freedom for the particular installation.

NOTE 4  $\Phi_5 = \Phi_{2.C6}$  -1

#### Key

NORSOK standard

### Draft Edition 2, June 2011

Categories of loads	Loads	Refe	erence	Load	combi	inations	s A	Load co	mbina B	tions		Load	comb	ination	s C	
		EN 13001-2	NORSOK R-002	Partial safety factors	A1	A11	А3	Partial safety factors	B1	В3	Partial safety factors	C1	C2	C3	C6	C8
				<b>Y</b> p				<b>Y</b> p			<b>Y</b> p					

- A1: ULS: Pick-up of rescue boat from sea in NLS conditions without environmental actions from wind, snow/ice or temperature variations. The effect of waves shall be taken into account.
- A11: ULS: Rescue boat suspended from hang-off relief arrangement.
- A3: ULS: Acceleration of hanging rescue boat at start of descent or start of hoisting in NLS conditions without environmental actions from wind, snow/ice or temperature variations.
- B1: ULS: Pick-up of boat rescue boat from sea in LS conditions in combination with environmental actions.
- B3: ULS: Acceleration of hanging rescue boat at start of descent or start of hoisting in NLS conditions with environmental actions.
- C1: ULS: Re-entry during hoisting in LS conditions.
- C2: ALS: Rescue boat in the stowed position ready for launching in combination with loads from extreme wind conditions corresponding to wind speed with 10 000 year return period.
- C3: ULS: Static and dynamic load testing in NLS conditions.
- C6: ULS: Launching appliance with a test load equal to 1,1 times the rated capacity (see A.1.4.2) in combination with loads caused by emergency braking during lowering at full speed.
- C8: ALS: Launching appliance with hoist load in combination with loads due to external excitation of the foundation.

At the time of publication of this NORSOK standard, hoisting/lowering is the only motion of a typical launching and recovery appliance for rescue boats. Table A.9 summarises the load combinations to be analysed for such appliances. A more detailed analysis of load combinations is needed for launching and recovery appliances with other movements. For such appliances, reference is made to EN 13001-2, Table 10.

NORSOK standard

Table A.10 Group E.7

TO BE DEVELOPED

## A.1.5 Dynamic effects

#### A.1.5.1 General

The dynamic effects resulting from inertial effects during acceleration of drives and hoisting and gravity effects are generally given as various dynamic coefficients,  $\Phi_{\rm l}$ . All dynamic coefficients shall be calculated in accordance with EN 13001-2, except  $\Phi_{\rm 2}$  which shall be calculated in accordance with the requirements of this Annex.  $\Phi_{\rm 2}$  may vary for each load combination as described herein.

If necessary, means shall be provided to limit the dynamic coefficient  $\Phi_2$  to the following maximum values:

- 2,5 for life saving equipment where personnel is standing;
- 4,0 for life saving equipment where personnel is sitting with seat belts.

For the purpose of limiting the dynamic coefficient  $\Phi_2$ , the following means may be applied:

- additional elastic elements to reduce the total system stiffness, e.g. an elastic pennant placed between the hoist medium and means of connection:
- passive shock absorbers forming integral part of the launching appliance, its hoisting machinery or the means of connection (either part of the launching appliance or part of the life saving equipment).

The minimum dynamic coefficient  $\Phi_2$  shall be no less than 1,5 in any load combinations.

## A.1.5.2 Dynamic coefficient $\Phi_2$ for load combination A1 and B1 (pick-up from sea)

Offshore there will be relative motions between the base of the lifting appliance and the life saving equipment lifted from or lowered to the sea. For calculation of inertial and gravity effects acting on the hoist load at the time of pick-up from sea in load combinations A1 and B1, the dynamic coefficient ( $\Phi_{2,A1}$  or  $\Phi_{2,B1}$ ) shall be calculated in accordance with equation (A.1).

### A.1.5.3 Dynamic coefficient $\Phi_2$ for load combination C1 (re-entry)

Re-entry implies that the launching appliance is reloaded due to the wave motions if the release mechanism does not open after the life saving equipment has landed on the sea, or during hoisting if hoisting velocity is less than the vertical wave velocity.

The dynamic coefficient  $\Phi_{2,C1}$  for re-entry is the ratio between the maximum dynamic force created in hoist rope(s) during re-entry, and the mass of hoist load. Equation (A.1) may be used as a simplified method for calculating  $\Phi_{2,C1}$ . If the simplified method does not sufficiently limit the dynamic coefficient according to the limit values stated above, the maximum force created in the hoist rope(s) shall be determined by a more detailed study, e.g. calculations, simulations or model tests, taking into account the wave period, the lowering or hoisting speed, the stiffness of the launching and recovery appliance and the moment of inertia of the winch drum.

## A.1.5.4 Dynamic coefficient $\Phi_2$ for load combination C6 (emergency cut-out)

The dynamic coefficient  $\Phi_{2,C6}$  for the impact on the hoist load occurring when lowering at full speed and activating emergency stop in the upper position, shall be calculated in accordance with equation (A.2).

## A.1.5.5 Dynamic coefficient $\Phi_2$ for load combination C7 (test of release mechanism)

If the release mechanism of lifeboats is to be tested when the lifeboat is hanging in the stowed position with hang-off relief arrangement connected, the impact caused by sudden drop into the hang-off relief arrangement shall be taken into account by applying a dynamic coefficient  $\Phi_{2,C7}$ . The maximum dynamic force in the hang-off relief arrangement shall be established based on an equation for energy conservation from kinetic to potential energy, taking into account the stiffness of the hang-off relief arrangement, the possible drop height and pretension of the hang-off relief arrangement. The dynamic coefficient  $\Phi_{2,C7}$  is the ratio between the maximum dynamic force and the weight of the hoist load.

#### A.1.5.6 Use of shock absorbers

If shock absorbers are needed to limit the dynamic force during any of the above situations, the dynamic coefficient shall be calculated as the ratio between the maximum dynamic force created in hoist rope(s) during the stroke of the absorbing element and the weight of the hoist load.

Launching and recovery appliances with shock absorber

The shock absorber must be calibrated for the actual load range.

The dynamic factor is determined as:

$$\Psi = \frac{F_{\text{max}}}{F_0} \tag{A.1}$$

where

 $F_0$  is the static force at hook  $F_{\text{max}}$  is the maximum dynamic force at hook

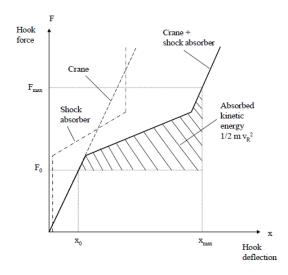
Fmax is calculated from the energy equation, see Figure A.1

$$\frac{1}{2} \cdot \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{v_R}^2 = \int_{\mathbf{x_0}}^{\mathbf{x_{max}}} (\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{x}) - \mathbf{F_0}) \, d\mathbf{x}$$
(A.2)

where

 $m=F_0/g=$  total mass at hook  $v_R$  is the relative velocity between hook and deck at liftoff  $x_0$  is the vertical deflection at hook due to static load  $x_{\text{max}}$  is the vertical deflection at hook due to dynamic load F(x) is the force at hook as a function of the vertical deflection at hook  $F(x_{\text{max}})=F_{\text{max}}$ 

Figure A.1 - Effect of shock absorbers



#### A.1.5.7 Expressions for dynamic coefficient Φ2

$$\phi_2 = 1 + k_{\Delta} \cdot v_R \cdot \sqrt{\frac{C}{g * R_n}} \tag{A.3}$$

$$\phi_2 = \frac{F_{bra}}{R_n} \tag{A.4}$$

#### where

is the stiffness (in N/m) (weight of hoist load divided by the corresponding hook deflection) C

is the rated capacity (in N) (static weight of the hoist load, i.e the life saving equipment)  $R_n$ 

is the relative velocity (in m/s) between the load and hook at the time of pick-up  $V_R$ 

is the gravity acceleration (9,81 m/s<sup>2</sup>)

g  $F_{bra}$ is the maximum rope force (in N) at emergency braking during lowering at full speed in the upper position

 $k_{\Delta}\,$ is a reduction factor depending on the shape of the particular life saving appliance (e.g. rescue boat, life boat, life raft) to be lifted out of the sea water, taking into account that lift off from water gives a gradually increased dynamic load compared to an immediate load lift off from e.g. a boat deck. The value of this factor is to be set to 1,0 by default, unless a lower value has been demonstrated by

 $v_{\scriptscriptstyle R}$  shall be calculated as follows:

$$v_R = v_H + \sqrt{v_D^2 + v_C^2} \tag{A.5}$$

### where

is +0,5·v<sub>Hmax</sub> for pick-up in waves  ${\rm v}_{\rm H}$ 

is +1,0·v<sub>Hmax</sub> for re-entry during hoisting  ${\rm V}_{\rm H}$ 

 $V_{\mathsf{H}}$ 

is  $-1.0 \cdot V_{Hmax}$  for re-entry during lowering is the maximum steady state hoisting or lowering velocity (in m/s) for the rated capacity to be lifted or  $V_{Hmax}$ lowered

is the vertical velocity (in m/s) of the sea surface or deck on which the life saving equipment is  $V_D$ located given by equation (A.6)

 $v_{\text{C}}$ is the vertical velocity (in m/s) of the lifting appliance due to wave motions given by expression (A.7)

$$v_D = \frac{K_1 * H_s}{H_s + K_2} \tag{A.6}$$

$$v_C = K_3 * H_s \tag{A.7}$$

#### where

H<sub>s</sub> is the significant wave height for the operational limitation in m

 $K_1 = 4,00$ 

 $K_2 = 3,10$ 

 $K_3 = 0$ for bottom fixed installations (/s)

 $K_3 = 0.25$  for semi submersible installations (/s)

 $K_3 = 0.50$  for monohull installations (FPSO, etc.) (/s)

The stiffness (C) of the launching and recovery appliance shall be calculated taking into account all elements from the means of connection via the ropes through to the support structure. Elastic pennant, if installed, may also be taken into consideration.

Stiffness may be calculated according to: 
$$C = \frac{R_n}{\sum \Delta L_n}$$
 (N/m) (A.8)

where

 $\sum \Delta L_{\scriptscriptstyle n}$  is the sum of all the contribution to the total hook deflection in m.

For steel wire ropes the elastic deflection may be taken from the following equation:

Elastic deflection of rope [m]:

$$\Delta L_s = \frac{R_n \cdot L_W}{E_w \cdot A_w \cdot 10^3} \quad \text{(m)}$$

where

 $L_{\scriptscriptstyle W}$  is the rope length in mm

NOTE 1 For recovery (pick-up) operations, the rope length shall be calculated with the means of connection at 1 m above the lowest operational level. For emergency braking, the elevation of the means of connection should be taken to be not lower than 3 m below the upper position.

NOTE 2 Equation (A.9) is based on single fall. For multiple falls, the number of falls must be taken into account.

 $E_{w}$  is the modulus of elasticity as specified by the rope manufacturer for steel wire ropes in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

Area of rope [mm<sup>2</sup>]:

$$A_{w} = \frac{\pi \cdot D_{w}^{2}}{4} \cdot C_{F} \tag{A.10}$$

where

 $D_{\scriptscriptstyle W}$  is the nominal rope diameter in mm

 $C_F$  is the fill factor of the actual nominal rope construction

### A.1.6 Hoisting and lowering velocities

Hoisting and lowering velocities shall be in accordance with Table A.11.

Table A.11 – Hoisting and lowering velocities for launching and recovery appliances

	Group	Lowering	Hoisting
		NLS condition	
E.1	Sec. means of launching	$V_{Hmin}$	
E.1	Means of retrieval		$V_{Hmin}$
E.2		$V_{Hmin}$	$V_{Hmin}$
E.6		As for LS condition	As for LS conditon
		LS condition	
E.1	Sec. means of launching		
E.1	Means of retrieval		
E.2		V <sub>Hmin</sub> NMD maximum 1,1 m/s	
E.6		$V_{Hmin}$	$V_{Hmin}$
where	`		

where

$$V_{H\min} = K_0 * \sqrt{V_D^2 + V_C^2} \tag{A.11}$$

Page 52 of 173

$$K_0$$
 = 0,50  $V_D$  is given by equation (A.6)  $V_C$  is given by equation (A.7)

### A.1.7 Risk coefficient according to EN 13001-2, 4.3.2

For the lifting of personnel all load carrying structure and machinery components including wire ropes, means of connection and their anchorage in the life saving equipment shall be designed with a risk whet the designed with 5.9.

Exception: Load combination C.1 for group E.2, see Table A.5.

NOTE This requirement addresses the subject of increased mechanical strength during the lifting of persons, see Machinery Directive, Annex I. Clause 6.1.1.

#### A.1.8 Limit states and proof of competence

#### A.1.8.1 General

The characteristic resistance  $(R_k)$  of material, members, connections and components shall be derived from the subsequent sections or references given in the subsequent sections. The limit design resistance  $(R_d)$ , in terms of stresses and forces, to be applied for the proof of competence, shall be based on the characteristic resistance and resulting resistance coefficients  $(\gamma_R)$  as described herein or as described in the references given.

In general the limit design resistance is expressed as:

$$R_d = \frac{R_k}{\gamma_R} \tag{A.12}$$

#### A.1.8.2 Structural members and connections

For launching appliances and load bearing parts of life saving equipment (e.g. anchorage for means of connection), the limit design resistance for structural members and their bolted, pinned and welded connections shall be taken from the following references:

Steel structures: CEN/TS 13001-3-1, Cranes – General design – Part 3-1

Aluminium structures: EN 1999-1-1

• Composite structures: DNV-OS-E406 Sec. 6 C

Composite materials shall be selected and documented in accordance with criteria given in Sec. 5 of DNV-OS-E406. Methods described in DNV-OS-C501 may be used to calculate and document their material properties.

Means of connection made from rolled structural steel or aluminium are considered as structural members.

## A.1.8.3 Ropes, chains, means of connections and other lifting components

#### A.1.8.3.1 General

The characteristic resistance ( $R_k$ ) of ropes, chains, means of connection and other lifting components shall be their breaking force. The design strain ( $S_d$ ) for these components shall be calculated for all relevant load combinations listed in Table A.3 to Table A.10.

#### A.1.8.3.2 Steel wire ropes in running reeving systems

Rope length

Steel wire ropes used for launching of life saving equipment to sea shall have a minimum length which takes into account the most unfavourable situation such as inclination of the installation or lowest astronomical tide, wave trough and drift off according to Table A.2.

 $\underline{Strength\ requirements}$  The characteristic resistance  $(R_k)$  for ropes shall be taken as their breaking force  $(F_u)$ , taking into account reduction factors resulting from end terminations.

The minimum tensile strength for steel wire ropes shall be 1 770 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, and the maximum tensile strength shall be 1 960 N/mm<sup>2</sup> according to EN 12385-4.

Wire ropes shall be of rotation resistant construction preferably 35x7 with steel core or 6x36WS IWRC single layer round strand rope according to EN 12385-1, EN 12385-2 and EN 12385-3.

Limit states and proof of competence of ropes in running reeving systems shall be calculated according to CEN/TS 13001-3-2.

Note Friction forces in the reeving system need not be included for the lowering operation where it will function as an additional friction brake. For recovery operation the friction forces shall be included where appropriate.

The design strain  $(S_d)$  for ropes is the rope force  $(F_{S_d,s})$  resulting from the load actions. The limit design resistance for ropes is the limit design rope force ( $F_{Rd,s}$ ), expressed as

$$F_{Rd,s} = \frac{F_u}{\gamma_{rb}} \tag{A.13}$$

where

 $F_{Sd,s}$  is the design rope force according to CEN/TS 13001-3-2, clause 5, as resulting from the load combinations in this NORSOK standard

 $F_{{\scriptscriptstyle Rd.s}}$  is the limit design rope force

is the minimum breaking forc

e as specified by the rope manufacturer, taking into account the reduction caused by the method of end termination

is the minimum rope resistance factor according to CEN/TS 13001-3-2, 5.4, (minimum 2,0).  $\gamma_{rb}$ 

The proof of static strength of steel wire ropes shall be as follows:

$$F_{Sd,s} \le F_{Rd,s} \tag{A.14}$$

NOTE Proof of fatigue strength in accordance with CEN/TS 13001-3-2, clause 6, is not considered necessary for group E. For these appliances corrosion will normally be the governing replacement criterion.

#### Bending diameters

The bending diameter ratio (D/d) on rope sheaves and drums shall be minimum 18

## Terminations of wire ropes

Terminations of wire ropes shall be in accordance with the following standards:

· Ferrules and ferrule-securing EN 13411-3 Metal and resin socketing EN 13411-4 Asymmetric wedge sockets EN 13411-5 Symmetric wedge sockets EN 13411-7

#### A.1.8.3.3 Chains, means of connection and other lifting components

Standardised, metallic components

Standardised components, such as chains, links, forged steel components and forged hooks shall be of grade 8 complying with the following standards:

Chains: EN 818-2
Forged steel components: EN 1677-1
Forged hooks with latch: EN 1677-2
Links: EN 1677-4

These components shall be selected with a breaking force resulting from the following equations, whichever gives the greatest breaking force:

$$BF \ge M \cdot g \cdot 6 \tag{A.15}$$

$$BF \ge M \cdot g \cdot \phi_2 \cdot \gamma_p \cdot \gamma_n \cdot \gamma_{rb} \tag{A.16}$$

where

BF is the breaking force (kN)

M is the mass of hoist load (tonnes) for the particular load combination

 $g = 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \text{ is the gravity constant}$ 

b<sub>2</sub> is the dynamic factor for the particular load combination

 $\gamma_{\text{p}}^{-}$  is the partial safety factor for the particular load combination

 $y_n = 1.5$  is the risk coefficient

 $\gamma_{rb}$  = 1,8 is the component resistance factor

For hook shaped components made of steel forgings, the proof of competence may alternatively be performed in accordance with FprCEN/TS 13001-3-5 <sup>1)</sup> with the following additional requirement:

Specific resistance coefficient shall be set to  $\gamma_{sm} = 1,0$ .

### Non-standardised, metallic components

Means of connection made from components that are not shaped in accordance with any standardised components, shall have a breaking force equal to that required for standardised components. In addition these components shall be able to withstand a manufacturing proof force (MPF) without permanent deformation. The manufacturing proof force shall be:

$$MPF \ge \frac{BF}{1.6} \tag{A.17}$$

## Standardised non-metallic components

Standardised non-metallic components, such as roundslings or slings made from man-made or natural fibre webbings or ropes shall be made in accordance with the following standards:

Flat woven webbing slings: EN 1492-1
 Roundslings: EN 1492-2
 Slings from fibre ropes: EN 1492-4

Exception: Elastic pennants for rescue boats lifted by offshore cranes, see A.7.4.1.

These components shall be selected with a breaking force resulting from equation (A.16) with resistance factor  $\gamma_{rb} = 2.3$ .

## A.1.8.4 Strength proportions

\_

<sup>1)</sup> To be published.

For launching and recovery appliances of group E.2 and E.6 the requirement in 4.8 shall be documented by calculations, showing that the launching appliance will not be detached from the installation before other load bearing parts have collapsed.

## A.1.9 Rated capacity limiter

Launching and recovery appliances including winches or boom luffing systems shall be equipped with a rated capacity limiter in accordance with EN 12077-2, 5.2, 5.3 and 5.4. The rated capacity limiter shall not prevent lowering.

#### A.1.10 Secondary brake

Winches for hoisting, boom luffing systems and skidding arrangements on launching and recovery appliances for life saving equipment for the lifting of personnel shall be equipped with a secondary brake in addition to the brake as required by 5.7.6 (primary brake), when specified for the particular equipment group in the subsequent clauses of this annex. The secondary brake shall be able to retard and hold the maximum load without sag if the primary brake fails. The secondary brake shall be designed according to the same requirements given for the primary brake given in 5.7.6, or be based on hydraulic restriction.

Primary and secondary brakes shall be arranged for individual testing.

The secondary brake shall preferably act directly on the winch drum, but a load path fully independent from the primary brake will be considered acceptable.

The secondary brake shall be of a different type and make then the primary brake.

Where hydraulic cylinders are used, two independent cylinders shall be provided for each function such that one cylinder is capable to stop and hold the load, in case of a failure of the other cylinder.

Brakes based on hydraulic restriction (e.g. shut off valves etc.), shall be capable of withstanding shocks due to brake impacts. Fluid loss prevention shall be provided according to EN 982.

Where hydraulic restriction is used as a brake, the following requirements apply:

- a) the hydraulic motor/cylinder shall have a closing valve directly at the high-pressure (load) connection (no pipes of hose connections in between);
- the closing valve shall close as a result of pressure loss at the low-pressure connection (inlet connection during lowering). This function shall be accomplished by direct bore or piping between the closing valve and the low-pressure connection;
- c) the hydraulic motor/cylinder shall always be ensured sufficient working fluid, also in the event of power failure, i.e. by gravity feeding).

#### A.1.11 Secondary independent power and control system

Powered launching and recovery appliances for the lifting or lowering of persons, which are not designed for drop, skid launching or gravity lowering, shall be equipped with a secondary independent power and secondary independent control system. The secondary power system shall not be affected by failures in the primary power system, and the secondary control system shall not be affected by failures in the primary control system.

For such appliances, the secondary independent power and control system shall be operated from the control station and shall be simple to activate and operate.

The secondary independent power system shall have sufficient capacity to hoist and lower the same load as the primary power system. Reduced speed is acceptable, see 5.15.3.

#### A.1.12 Securing arrangement for training and maintenance

For training and maintenance purposes, when the life saving equipment is not intended to be launched, a fail-safe securing arrangement including an interlock system is to be provided to prevent unintended operation or release.

The securing arrangement may be such that launching is not physically possible when the securing arrangement is in place and that launching is only possible when the securing arrangement is removed.

The securing arrangement including attachments to structure shall be durably marked for identification and for prevention of misuse.

#### A.1.13 Procedures

Clear and unambiguous procedures shall be provided for

- · primary means of launching,
- · secondary means of launching,
- maintenance and installation facilities,
- · life saving operations (i.e. evacuation or rescue).

Easily understandable operations instruction and permanent sign plates in accordance with EN 12644-2 and IMO Resolution A.760 (18), as amended by IMO resolution MSC.82 (70), shall be posted at the launching station.

#### A.1.14 Testing

#### A.1.14.1 General

Launching and recovery appliances together with means of connection and their anchorage in life saving equipment shall undergo testing as specified in this subclause to prove that requirements given in this NORSOK standard, are met.

#### A.1.14.2 Group E.1 - Free fall lifeboats - Primary means of launching and hang-off

### A.1.14.2.1 Prototype tests

#### A.1.14.2.1.1 Release test, means of connection

The means of connection shall be loaded with a force equal to or greater than 200 % of the rated capacity (see A.2.3) of the primary means of launching. The load may be the lifeboat itself with test loads, or a dummy load connected to the means of connection in a realistic manner. The means of connection and direction of load shall be oriented in the same way as it will be when installed on the host facility without heel or trim. The release mechanism shall be opened by the activation system. The test is considered successful if the load is released and dropped, and if there is no damage on the means of connection or the release system. The test shall be repeated for the most unfavourable heel/trim angles up 17° in any direction if this is realistic for the final installation.

NOTE If the host facility specific value for angle of heel for the damaged host facility is known, this test may be performed at the host specific angle of heel in stead of 17°. Reference is made to Table A.2.

#### A.1.14.2.1.2 Tensile test, means of connection

The means of connection shall be subjected to a tensile test to verify that the breaking force is equal to or greater than the breaking force specified in A.1.8.2.3. The direction of the load shall reflect the final installation of the host facility without heel or trim. The load shall be kept stable for at least 2 min. The test is considered successful if there is no failure to the means of connection or release mechanism. In this context the term "failure" means: the means of connection do not disconnect, and release tests with loads equal to empty lifeboat and 110 % of the rated capacity are successfully carried out after the tensile test.

#### A.1.14.2.1.3 Test of actuator force

The actuator force required to open the release mechanism when the means of connection are loaded with a force equal to 100 % of the rated capacity of the primary means of launching (see A.2.3) shall be measured. The actuator shall then be subjected to a force equal to twice this force. The test is successful if there is no damage to the actuator and if the same actuator is successfully used in the prototype test #4.

#### A.1.14.2.1.4 Release test, lifeboat arrangement

The lifeboat shall be suspended from the primary means of launching in the launching appliance with loads corresponding to empty lifeboat and 110 % of the rated capacity (see A.2.3) of the primary means of launching with the launching appliance oriented in the upright position, i.e. corresponding to final installation on the host facility without heel or trim. For both loading conditions, the release mechanism shall be opened by the activation system. The test is considered successful if the lifeboat is dropped as intended. The test shall be repeated for both loading conditions with the launching appliance oriented in the most unfavourable

heel/trim angles up to 17° in any direction. The actuator subjected to prototype test #3 shall be used for this test.

NOTE If the host facility specific value for angle of heel for the damaged host facility is known, this test may be performed at the host specific angle of heel in stead of 17°. Reference is made to Table A.2.

# A.1.14.2.1.5 Function test of activation system for release mechanism, manually operated actuator

The following requirements shall be demonstrated by functional tests:

- the number of strokes required to open the release mechanism and release the lifeboat is within the range given in A.2.4.1.2, for loading conditions corresponding to empty lifeboat and 110 % of the rated capacity (see A.2.3) of the primary means of launching;
- the manual force required to operate the enabling device or the manual operating device does not exceed the value given in A.2.4.1.2, for the same loading conditions;
- it is not possible to open the release mechanism with the actuator when the enabling device is not activated.

# **A.1.14.2.1.6** Function test of activation system for release mechanism, powered actuator The following requirements shall be demonstrated by functional tests:

- the energy source provided for the powered operated actuator has sufficient amount of potential energy
  to open the release mechanism and release the lifeboat in two subsequent trials without recharging
  between the two releases, for loading conditions corresponding to empty lifeboat and 110 % of the rated
  capacity (see A.2.3) of the primary means of launching (whichever is the most unfavourable);
- the energy source is capable of producing an actuator force of at least two times the force measured in test #3 above:
- it is not possible to open the release mechanism by operating only one of the control devices;
- each of the two control devices returns to neutral position after activation.

# A.1.14.2.1.7 Dynamic overload tests, skidding arrangement or other mechanisms other than hoisting/lowering

With the launching appliance in an upright position, corresponding to no heel or trim of the host installation, a load equal to 110 % of the rated capacity for the primary means of launching shall be suspended from the suspension point of the primary means of launching, resting at the skidding arrangement or other mechanism in a realistic manner simulating load action from the weight of the lifeboat. The skidding arrangement or other mechanism shall move the load from the full inboard position to the full outboard position and back again, using machinery and power source similar to that of the final installation. The test shall be repeated with the launching appliance inclined to 17° in the most unfavourable directions of heel and trim. The same tests shall be performed with a load equal to a fully equipped lifeboat without persons. The tests are considered successful if the launching appliance is able to perform the required motions for both loading conditions, and there is no damage or permanent deformation after the tests.

NOTE If the host facility specific value for angle of heel for the damaged host facility is known, this test may be performed at the host specific angle of heel in stead of 17°. Reference is made to Table A.2.

## A.1.14.2.2 Production and installation tests

#### A.1.14.2.2.1 General

The production and installations tests are intended to be performed on each manufactured lifeboat in combination with its dedicated launching appliance. The most appropriate time for testing, e.g. FAT or testing during/after commissioning at the host facility, may be agreed in each separate project.

## A.1.14.2.2.2 Release test, lifeboat arrangement

The lifeboat shall be suspended from the primary means of launching in its dedicated launching appliance with loads corresponding to empty lifeboat and 110 % of the rated capacity (see A.2.3) of the primary means of launching with the launching appliance oriented in the upright position (i.e. corresponding to final installation on the host facility without heel or trim). For both loading conditions, the release mechanism shall be opened by the activation system. The test is considered successful if the lifeboat is released as intended.

The two independent activation systems (as required by A.2.4.1.2) shall be tested separately. For the purpose of this test, the manufacturer may decide if the lifeboat should be dropped into sea or if the drop should be stopped by a fall arrest device purpose made for this test, e.g. the hang-off relief equipment or

Page **58** of **173** 

other device. In order to avoid exposing persons to risk, a purpose built system for remote operation of the activation systems may be utilised.

#### A.1.14.2.2.3 Function test, release system

The function tests described in A.1.14.2.1.5 and A.1.14.2.1.6 (as applicable) shall be performed.

## A.1.14.2.2.4 Means of launch testing by simulation

The means of launch testing by simulation, as required by DNV-OS-E406 Sec. 11 A500, shall be demonstrated in accordance with a prescribed procedure describing (a) realistic functional test(s) to confirm that both the activation system and release mechanism are working properly. For the purpose of this test, the lifeboat shall be suspended in the primary means of launching with loads corresponding to 110 % of the rated capacity (see A.2.3) of the primary means of launching.

#### A.1.14.2.2.5 Static overload tests

The lifeboat shall be suspended from the primary means of launching in its dedicated launching appliance with loads corresponding to 220 % of the rated capacity (see A.2.3) for the primary means of launching.

The lifeboat shall be suspended from the hang-off relief arrangement in its dedicated launching appliance with loads corresponding to 220 % of the rated capacity (see A.2.3) for the hang-off relief arrangement.

The tests are considered successful if there is no damage or permanent deformation to the main structure, the primary means of launching or the hang-off relief arrangement after the tests.

As an alternative way to perform the above tests, a test load equal to 220 % of the rated capacity may be suspended from the means of connection part of the launching appliance and the hang-off relief arrangement, respectively. A realistic tensile load test shall then be performed on primary means of launching and attachment points in the lifeboat for hang-off suspension.

#### A.1.14.3 Group E.1 – Free fall lifeboats – Secondary means of launching and means of retrieval

#### A.1.14.3.1 Prototype tests

## A.1.14.3.1.1 Static overload tests, main structure

A load equal to 220 % of the fully loaded lifeboat shall be suspended from the main structure of the appliance for secondary means of launching and means of retrieval, respectively, without loading the winch. The load shall be applied in the most unfavourable position of the launching appliance or means of retrieval, simulating a realistic load path for the weight of the lifeboat. The tests are considered successful if there is no damage or permanent deformation to the main structure.

## A.1.14.3.1.2 Static overload test, winches

A load equal to 150 % of the rated capacity (see A.2.3) of the means of retrieval or secondary means of launching, shall be suspended from the means of connection forming part of the hoist rope of the winch for the means of retrieval and secondary means of launching, respectively. The load shall be applied with the hoist rope at the outermost layer on the winch drum. If the winch is equipped with both primary and secondary brakes for the purpose of lifting/lowering persons, both brakes shall be applied during this load test

For winches equipped with primary and secondary brakes for the purpose of lifting/lowering persons, the following test shall be performed in addition: a load equal to 150 % of the rated capacity for lifting persons (see A.2.3) shall be suspended from the means of connection forming part of the hoist rope of the winch. The load shall be applied with the hoist rope at the outermost layer on the winch drum. The test shall be applied for the primary brake (with the secondary brake disabled) and the secondary brake (with the primary brake disabled) separately.

The tests are considered successful if the brakes are able to hold the load, either separately or in combination as tested.

#### A.1.14.3.1.3 Dynamic overload test, winches

A load equal to 110 % of the rated capacity of the secondary means of launching shall be suspended from the means of connection forming part of the hoist rope, when the winch is installed in the main structure. load shall be lowered at full speed, starting from the uppermost position of the lifeboat. The lowering motion shall be stopped by the most severe method, e.g. sudden application of winch brakes or emergency stop,

immediately after the lowering speed has reached its maximum. If the winch is equipped with both primary and secondary brakes for the purpose of lifting/lowering persons, both brakes shall be applied during this load test. The maximum dynamic peak force on the test load, corresponding to  $F_{bra}$  in equation (A.2), shall be recorded during the stop. The test is considered successful if both of the following criteria are met:

- the brakes brings the winch movement to a complete stop;
- the recorded peak force is equal to or less than the force F<sub>bra</sub> used in equation (A.2) to calculate the dynamic coefficient Φ<sub>2.C6</sub> as defined in A.1.5.4 for load combination C6.

For winches equipped with primary and secondary brakes for the purpose of lifting/lowering persons, the following tests shall be performed in addition: a load equal to 110 % of the rated capacity for lifting of persons (see A.2.3) shall be suspended from the means of connection forming part of the hoist rope, when the winch is installed in the main structure. The load shall be lowered at full speed, starting from the uppermost position of the lifeboat. The lowering motion shall be stopped by the most severe method, e.g. sudden application of both winch brakes by emergency stop, immediately after the lowering speed has reached its maximum. The maximum dynamic peak force on the test load, corresponding to  $F_{\rm bra}$  in equation (A.2), shall be recorded during the stop. The test is considered successful if the recorded peak force is equal to or less than the force  $F_{\rm bra}$  used in equation (A.2) to calculate the dynamic coefficient  $\Phi_{\rm 2.C6}$  as defined in A.1.5.4 for load combination C6.

The test shall be repeated with the application of each brake separately, i.e:

- · stopping by sudden application of primary brake when secondary brake is disabled, and
- · stopping by sudden application of secondary brake when primary brake is disabled

These tests are considered successful if both brakes are able to bring the lowering motion to a complete stop.

#### A.1.14.3.1.4 Tensile test, means of connection

The means of connection shall be subjected to a tensile test to verify that the breaking force is equal to or greater than the breaking force specified in A.1.8.2.3. The direction of the load shall reflect the final installation of the host facility without heel or trim. The load shall be kept stable for at least 2 min. The test is considered successful if there is no failure to the means of connection or release mechanism. In this context the term "failure" means: The means of connection do not break or disconnect, and it is possible to operate the release mechanism as intended after the test.

#### A.1.14.3.1.5 Release test

A test shall be performed to verify that the release mechanism can not be opened when loaded with a force greater than 10 % of the rated capacity of the means of connection.

## A.1.14.3.2 Production and installation tests

#### A.1.14.3.2.1 General

The production and installations tests are intended to be performed on each manufactured lifeboat in combination with its dedicated launching appliance. The most appropriate time for testing, e.g. FAT or testing during/after commissioning at the host facility, may be agreed in each separate project.

# A.1.14.3.2.2 Speed tests

The hoisting and lowering speed of the secondary means of retrieval and secondary means of launching shall be measured when hoisting or lowering a load equal to the rated capacity for the mechanism. The tests are considered successful if the speeds are within the limits described in A.1.6. In case of gravity lowering with two independent constant speed control devices, the lowering speed test shall be performed for each speed control device separately, with the other speed control device disabled or adjusted to a higher speed. Both speed control devices shall be adjusted to correct speed after the test.

#### A.1.14.3.2.3 Dynamic overload test, mechanisms other than hoisting

With the launching appliance in an upright position, corresponding to no heel or trim of the host installation, the lifeboat with loads corresponding to 110 % of the rated capacity for the secondary means of launching and means of retrieval shall be suspended from the suspension point of the secondary means of launching and means of retrieval. All mechanisms (i.e. skidding, luffing, slewing, telescoping etc), shall be moved in

their full operating range in both directions at full speed in sequence, one at a time. If the movement of the skidding mechanism loaded by the weight of the lifeboat is part of the cycle, the lifeboat shall be supported the skidding tracks during this test. There shall be at least two stops of each motion during the cycle. The is considered successful if the launching appliance is able to perform all the required motions, and there is damage or permanent deformation after the tests.

#### A.1.14.3.2.4 Dynamic overload test, winches

The tests described in A.1.14.3.1.3 shall be performed.

The tests described in the first paragraph of A.1.14.3.1.3 shall be performed with the suspended lifeboat with loads corresponding to 110 % of the rated capacity for the means of retrieval and secondary means of launching, respectively.

The tests described in A.1.14.3.1.3, second paragraph, may be performed with a test load.

#### A.1.14.3.2.5 Static overload tests, main structure

The static overload tests described in A.1.14.3.1.1 shall be performed.

#### A.1.14.3.2.6 Static overload tests, means of connection

A static overload test shall be performed on the means of connection for means of retrieval and secondary means of launching. A test load equal to 200 % of the rated capacity for the means of retrieval and secondary means of launching, respectively, shall be applied with an arrangement for tensile load testing. The tests are considered successful if there is no damage or permanent deformation to the means of connection after the tests.

## A.2 Appliances for free fall lifeboats (Group E.1)

#### A.2.1 General

The requirements in this subclause apply in addition to the requirements in A.1 for launching and recovery appliances of Group E.1. Relevant requirements in DNV-OS-E406 apply in addition to the requirements in this Annex. In case of conflicting requirements between this Annex and DNV-OS-E406, the requirements of this Annex prevail.

The requirements listed in A.2.2.1 to A.2.5 describe an acceptable design. Alternative designs are acceptable if the risk assessment (see 4.11) proves that the alternative design results in an equal or better safety, fitness for use, reliability and availability, than the requirements in this Annex.

The following requirements from NMD Regulation 4 July 2007 No. 853 apply for launching and recovery appliances of free fall lifeboats:

- section 11, 1st paragraph;
- section 11, 3<sup>rd</sup> paragraph.

## A.2.2 Limits of the launching and recovery appliances for free fall lifeboats

## A.2.2.1 General

Launching and recovery appliances of Group E.1 consist of the parts and sub-systems in A.2.2.2 to A.2.2.4.

## A.2.2.2 Main structure

The main structure of the launching and recovery appliance for free fall lifeboats is the structure that is directly loaded by the weight of the lifeboat when it is suspended from its primary or secondary means of launching, its means of retrieval or its hang-off relief arrangement. This includes foundation for mechanical equipment, e.g. winches, sheaves etc.

#### A.2.2.3 Primary means of launching

The primary means of launching is the main lifeboat launching system, normally based on gravity free fall or skidding combined with free fall. This includes means of connection, release system and securing arrangement

## A.2.2.4 Secondary means of launching

The secondary means of launching is an alternative lifeboat launching system, normally based on gravity lowering or power lowering by a lifting appliance. This includes a winch and fall system with its machinery and control system as well as means of connection, release mechanism, release system and securing arrangement. The purpose of the secondary means of launching is not to launch the lifeboat in an emergency situation.

#### A.2.2.5 Means of retrieval

The means of retrieval is a lifting appliance designed for retrieval of the lifeboat from sea to its stowed position on the host facility. The means of retrieval is normally the same mechanism as the secondary means of launching.

#### A.2.2.6 Hang-off relief arrangement

The hang-off relief arrangement is lifting accessories and means of connection intended for keeping the lifeboat in the stowed position when the lifeboat is disconnected from the primary means of launching, the secondary means of launching and the means of retrieval.

#### A.2.3 Rated capacity

When performing the proof of competence in accordance with A.1, the rated capacity for the different mechanisms shall be taken as follows:

primary means of launching:
 secondary means of launching:
 means of retrieval:
 hang-off relief arrangement:
 fully loaded lifeboat;
 1,1 x fully loaded lifeboat;
 1,1 x fully loaded lifeboat.

When performing proof of competence with the above listed rated capacities, the risk coefficient given in A.1.7 need not be applied.

"Fully loaded lifeboat" means the gross mass of a fully equipped lifeboat when boarded with its full complements of persons (crew and passengers).

Main structure shall be proved for the load effects resulting from applicable loads on all the mechanisms, whichever gives the highest load effects.

If secondary means of launching and means of retrieval is intended to be used with persons inside the lifeboat, the proof of competence shall also be performed with rated capacity for lifting persons. Rated capacity for lifting persons with these mechanisms shall as a minimum be taken as empty (fully equipped) lifeboat with crew of 3 persons. When performing proof of competence with rated capacity for lifting persons, the risk coefficient given in A.1.7 shall be applied.

#### A.2.4 Functional and safety requirements

#### A.2.4.1 Primary means of launching

### A.2.4.1.1 General

The primary means of launching shall be capable of launching the lifeboat in any possible loading condition, i.e. from empty lifeboat with crew of three persons to the fully loaded lifeboat.

## A.2.4.1.2 Release system for the primary means of launching

The release mechanism and activation systems shall comply with the following clauses of DNV-OS-E406 in addition to the requirements of this subclause:

- Sec. 7, C101;
- Sec. 11, A400;
- Sec. 11, A500.

The release mechanism and activation systems shall be capable of operating in all specified environmental conditions, including icing.

The release mechanism shall be designed in such a way that it will not be forced open by the self weight of the lifeboat, i.e. an external force from an actuator shall be necessary to open the release mechanism. The actuator and release mechanism shall be interconnected in the positive mode in accordance with ISO 12100-2, 4.5.

The two independent activation systems for the release mechanism, as required by DNV-OS-E406 Sec. 7, C101, may consist of manually operated or powered actuators.

Manually operated actuators shall have a manual operating device (e.g. hydraulic hand pump or manual jacking system) for each actuator and an enabling device (e.g. hydraulic by-pass valve or mechanical coupling device) placed out of reach for the operator of the manual operating device. The enabling device shall need a continuous manual force to be kept in the "enable" position. The number of required strokes for the manual operating device shall be in the range of 5 to 10. The maximum manual force required to operate the enabling device or the manual operating device shall not exceed 250 N.

Each powered actuator shall have its own source of stored energy and its own control system incorporating two manually operated control devices named "launch", which are required to be activated simultaneously to start moving the release mechanism. The control devices shall be protected against inadvertent operation and shall be placed such that one operator can not activate both control devices simultaneously. The control devices shall return to neutral position when released. The energy sources shall have a capacity of twice the amount of energy needed to open the release mechanism. It shall be possible to visually control the amount of stored energy.

Each actuator shall be designed to produce a force exceeding two times the force required to open the release mechanism with the fully loaded lifeboat.

#### A.2.4.2 Secondary means of launching

#### A.2.4.2.1 General

The secondary means of launching shall be capable of launching the lifeboat in any possible loading condition, i.e. from empty lifeboat up to the rated capacity for the mechanism as specified in A.2.3.

NOTE The requirements for secondary means of launching given in this clause are intended for launching devices utilising a winch and falls. Other solutions may also be considered, but at the time of publication of this NORSOK standard no other solutions are considered sufficiently qualified. Other solutions must be qualified in accordance with 4.15.

The requirements given in the subsequent subclauses are given based on the assumption that the secondary means of launching is intended to lower the lifeboat with a crew of three. If lowering the lifeboat with persons inside is not part of the intended use, the requirements in A.2.4.2.2.1 and A.2.4.2.2.3 need not

# A.2.4.2.2 Launching mechanism

#### A.2.4.2.2.1 Constant speed control

In case secondary means of launching is based on gravity lowering by a winch, the lowering speed shall be controlled by two independent constant speed control devices. Each speed control device shall be able to control the lowering motion within the speed limit given in A.1.6.

## A.2.4.2.2.2 Winch brakes, primary brakes

Winches shall be equipped with brakes (primary brake) in accordance with 5.7.6.

# A.2.4.2.2.3 Winch brakes, secondary brakes

Winches shall also be equipped with secondary brakes in accordance with A.1.10.

#### A.2.4.2.2.4 Control station

A control station for the secondary means of launching shall be located outside the lifeboat with the following control devices:

- start device to enable power supply to the launching and recovery appliance;
- stop device to disable power supply to the launching and recovery appliance;
- · emergency stop for emergency purposes to stop all motions;
- movement control device for starting, stopping and variable speed control of the lowering motion. The
  movement control device must be of the hold-to-run type, i.e. return to neutral position when released.

The control station for the secondary means of launching shall not influence on the primary means of launching and shall be located so that the operator has a clear view to the life boat in all positions.

#### A.2.4.2.3 Motion limiter

A motion limiter for the lowering motion shall be installed to prevent ropes from running off the drum or be winded on the drum in the wrong direction when the lifeboat is seaborne. The setting point of the motion limiter shall take into account the most unfavourable situation caused by possible sidelead and offlead, wave trough and the lowest astronomical tide. When the lower motion limit has been reached, at least 2 windings of wire rope shall remain on the winch drum.

## A.2.4.2.4 Secondary independent power supply and control system

In case secondary means of launching is based on powered lowering, a secondary independent power supply and control system in accordance with 5.5.13 shall be provided.

#### A.2.4.2.5 Release system for the secondary means of launching

The release system shall be operated from within the lifeboat and shall require two deliberate actions by the operator. Opening the release mechanism shall only be possible when the means of connection are offloaded.

The release system shall be physically protected against inadvertent use.

The release mechanism shall be designed in such a way that it will not be forced open by the self weight of the lifeboat, i.e. an external force from an actuator shall be necessary to open the release mechanism. The actuator and release mechanism shall be interconnected in the positive mode in accordance with ISO 12100-2. 4.5.

A manually operated actuator shall be provided for opening of the release mechanism of the secondary means of launching.

## A.2.4.3 Means of retrieval

#### A.2.4.3.1 General

The means of retrieval shall be capable of hoisting the rated capacity given in A.2.3 from sea surface to the stowed position.

NOTE The requirements for means of retrieval given in this clause are based on means of retrieval combined with secondary means of launching utilising a winch and falls. Other solutions may also be considered, but at the time of publication of this NORSOK standard, no other solutions are considered sufficiently qualified. Other solutions must be qualified in accordance with 4.15.

The requirements given in the subsequent subclauses are given based on the assumption that the means of retrieval is intended to hoist the lifeboat with a crew of three. If hoisting the lifeboat with persons inside is not part of the intended use, the requirements in A.2.4.3.2.3 need not apply.

## A.2.4.3.2 Hoisting mechanism

#### A.2.4.3.2.1 General

A powered winch shall be provided for hoisting the lifeboat with a minimum speed as given in A.1.6.

## A.2.4.3.2.2 Winch brakes, primary brakes

Winches shall be equipped with brakes (primary brake) in accordance with 5.7.6.

## A.2.4.3.2.3 Winch brakes, secondary brakes

Winches shall also be equipped with secondary brakes in accordance with A.1.10.

#### A.2.4.3.2.4 Control station

The control station described in A.2.4.2.2.4 shall also incorporate a movement control device for starting, stopping and variable speed control of the hoisting motion. The movement control device shall be of the hold-to-run type.

#### A.2.4.3.3 Motion limiter

A motion limiter for the hoisting motion shall be installed to prevent hoisting the lifeboat beyond the stowed position. A backup motion limiter shall be provided to prevent excessive pulling forces in the hoist rope(s) caused by hoisting the lifeboat against an obstruction in the event of failure of the first motion limiter.

#### A.2.4.3.4 Rated capacity limiter

A rated capacity limiter shall be provided to prevent the means of retrieval from hoisting loads in excess of the rated load.

### A.2.4.3.5 Secondary independent power supply and control system

The secondary independent power and control system required by A.2.4.2.4 shall also be provided for the means of retrieval.

#### A.2.4.3.6 Release system (means of connection)

TO BE DEVELOPED

#### A.2.4.4 Hang-off relief arrangement

Hang-off relief arrangement is the system required by DNV-OS-E406 sec.7, C102.

The hang-off relief arrangement shall be designed to keep the lifeboat in the stowed position when it is disconnected from the primary and secondary means of launching. Suspension points and means of connection for the hang-off arrangement forming integral parts of the lifeboat shall have easy access so that it is possible to connect without entering the lifeboat. The hang-off relief arrangement shall be designed so that it is not possible to attach any of its components to the wrong suspension points or means of

# A.2.4.5 Skidding systems

In addition to the limit states described in A.1.8, the proof of compentence shall be performed for the SLS for the skidding tracks. The verification of serviceability limit state shall be based on deflection criteria for the skidding tracks.

Deflection criteria for the skidding tracks shall be established with the aim to obtain the predicted trajectory in air during launching.

The SLS shall be proven for load combinations A1 and B1 in Table A.3.

## A.2.5 Marking

Means of retrieval and secondary means of launching shall be clearly marked to advise the user if the lifting or lowering of lifeboat with persons inside is allowed or not. Marking shall be provided in both cases, e.g.:

- "This winch/means of retrieval/secondary means of launching is intended for lifting/lowering the lifeboat
  with persons inside during installation, maintenance or training. Maximum number of persons is <number
  of persons>". or
- Lifting/lowering of persons is NOT ALLOWED with this winch/means of retrieval/secondary means of launching".

This marking shall be provided at the operator station.

## A.3 Appliances for lifeboats launched by falls and a winch (Group E.2)

# A.3.1 General

The requirements in this subclause come in addition to the requirements in A.1 for launching and recovery appliances of Group E.2.

The requirements listed in A.3.2 to A.3.8 describe an acceptable design. Alternative designs are acceptable if the risk assessment, see 4.11, proves that the alternative design results in an equal or better safety, fitness for use, reliability and availability, than the requirements in this Annex.

NOTE The requirements in this subclause of Annex A apply to launching appliances for lifeboats with two suspension points, i.e. one fore and one aft, with single fall or multiple falls at each suspension point. Other solutions (e.g. one suspension point) may also be considered, but at the time of publication of this NORSOK standard, such solutions are not considered sufficiently qualified. Other solutions must be qualified in accordance with 4.15.

The following requirements from NMD Regulation 4 July 2007 No. 853 apply for launching and recovery appliances of Group E.2:

- section 11, 1st paragraph;
- section 11, 2<sup>nd</sup> paragraph, including subclauses a through d, and g through h

#### A.3.2 Mode selector

Launching and recovery appliances of Group E.2 shall have a control device (mode selector) for manual selection of two distinguished different operational modes, i.e. mode for installation and maintenance, and mode for emergency evacuation. The mode selector shall be protected against unintended use. The mode selector shall be located at the control station outside the lifeboat. Clear indication of the selected mode shall be provided inside the lifeboat and at the control station outside the lifeboat.

The two operational modes shall have separate functional characteristics as described in A.3.3.1 and A.3.4.1, such that the functions of each mode can not influence or affect the other. A summary of the functional characteristics of the two operational modes is given in Table A.12.

Table A.12 - Modes and functional characteristics overview

Launc	hing appliance functional characteristics	Mode for installation and maintenance	Mode for emergency evacuation
	Start	Yes	"Launch"
	Stop	Yes	No
	Emergency stop	Yes	No
bat	Power hoisting and power	Yes	No
lifebc	lowering by variable speed control		
suspended lifeboat	Gravity lowering by two independent constant speed controls	No	Yes
sns	Re-entry overload protection	No	Yes
Φ	Primary brake	Yes	No
g E	Secondary brake	Yes	No
Ouring wire rope	Motion limiter up	Yes	No
· <u> </u>	Motion limiter down	Yes	No
ng	Secondary independent	Yes	No
ri.	power- and control system		
	Rated capacity limiter	Yes	No
	Primary release system	No	Yes
During seaborne lifeboat			
വ ഗ ≔	Back up release system	Yes	Yes

## A.3.3 Mode for installation and maintenance

## A.3.3.1 General

When the mode selector is in the position for installation and maintenance the requirements in A.3.3.2 to A.3.3.7 applies.

#### A.3.3.2 Control station

A control station shall be located outside the lifeboat with the following control devices:

- a) start device to enable power supply to the launching and recovery appliance;
- b) stop device to disable power supply to the launching and recovery appliance;
- c) emergency stop for emergency purposes to stop all motions;d) mode selector;
- e) indication of selected mode;
- f) movement control devices for hoisting and lowering and, if applicable, any other movements.

All movement control devices shall be of the hold-to-run type, i.e. return to neutral position when released. All movements shall have variable speed control.

The control station must be located so that the operator has a clear view to the life boat during all movements.

## A.3.3.3 Winch brakes

Primary and secondary brakes shall be operative as described in 5.7.6 and A.1.10.

## A.3.3.4 Motion limiters

Motion limiters for the upper and lower position of the lifeboat shall be installed and automatically prevent further hoisting or lowering at these positions and activate the brakes. The motion limiter for the upper position shall stop the movement at the level for boarding the lifeboat. A backup motion limiter shall be provided for the upper position to prevent excessive pulling forces in the hoist ropes caused by hoisting the lifeboat against an obstruction in the event of failure of the first motion limiter.

## A.3.3.5 Rated capacity limiter

A rated capacity limiter shall be installed to prevent any overload during operation.

#### A.3.3.6 Backup release system

Operation of the backup release system described in A.3.4.5.2 shall be possible in the mode for installation and maintenance.

## A.3.3.7 Secondary independent power and control system

In case of unintended stops as result of power failure or failure in the control system, secondary independent power and control systems in accordance with 5.5.13 shall be available in mode for installation and maintenance.

#### A.3.4 Mode for emergency evacuation

#### A.3.4.1 General

When the mode selector is in the position for emergency evacuation the following applies:

Before any movement of the lifeboat can be initiated the securing arrangement in A.1.12 need to be removed. A.3.4.2 Launch devices

The emergency evacuation shall be activated from within the lifeboat by the simultaneous operation of two control devices named "launch". The "launch" devices shall be placed such that one operator can not activate both control devices simultaneously. The control devices must return to neutral position when released. Activation of the "launch" devices shall initiate the lowering motion. The "launch" devices shall be protected against inadvertent operation. A duplicate "launch" device may also be arranged outside the lifeboat for remote operation for test purposes only.

#### A.3.4.3 Lowering mechanism and speed control

The lowering motion shall only depend on gravity or stored mechanical energy. Once the lowering motion has started it shall continue regardless of any crew intervention until the lifeboat is seaborne.

The lowering speed shall be controlled by two independent constant speed control devices. Each speed control device shall be able to control the lowering motion within the speed limit given in A.1.6.

### A.3.4.4 Disabled safety features

No other safety features shall be operational during the descent, except for those ensuring the release mechanism to be secured.

#### A.3.4.5 Release system

Once the lifeboat is seaborne and at least one of the wire rope suspensions is offloaded, the release mechanisms for both the wire rope suspensions shall be opened automatically by the primary activation system.

## A.3.4.6 Release mechanism

The release mechanism shall be designed in such a way that it will not be forced open by the self weight of the lifeboat, i.e. an external force from an actuator shall be necessary to open the release mechanism. The actuator and release mechanism shall be interconnected in the positive mode in accordance with ISO 12100-2, 4.5.

Dynamics caused by initiation of the emergency evacuation from installation deck elevation or oscillation during the descent (boat acceleration) shall not cause the release mechanism to open unintentionally.

The release mechanisms connecting the wire rope falls to the lifeboat, shall operate at all rope fleet angles between -45 degrees to +45 degrees from vertical in all horizontal directions and up to 180 degrees rope twist either way when the boat is seaborne.

### A.3.4.7 Activation systems

#### A.3.4.7.1 General

The release system shall have two independent activation systems for opening the release mechanisms, i.e. primary activation system and backup activation system. Both activation systems shall be designed to open the release mechanisms under the load of a fully loaded life boat.

### A.3.4.7.2. Primary activation system

The primary activation system consists of the following parts:

- a power source (i.e. stored potential energy) for each release mechanism;
- an actuator for each release mechanism;
- a control system incorporating a detection system for detection of
  - · seaborne lifeboat,
  - one of the suspension points is offloaded.

When the conditions for release (seaborne lifeboat and one offloaded suspension point) are detected, the control system shall initiate movement of the actuators to open both release mechanisms simultaneously.

The primary activation system shall be disabled until the conditions for release are detected.

The control system of the primary activation system shall have a required performance level (PLr) equal to or better than "d" in accordance with ISO 13849-1.

### A.3.4.7.3 Backup activation system

For the event of malfunctioning of the primary activation system, a manually operated backup activation system for opening both release mechanisms simultaneously shall be provided. The backup release system shall be available for both operational modes.

The activation system for the backup release system shall be operated from within the boat and shall require two deliberate actions by the operator.

Operation of the backup activation system shall only be possible when the lifeboat is seaborne.

The backup activation system shall be physically protected against inadvertent use.

#### A.3.4.8 Re-entry overload protection

Unless the manufacturer can demonstrate by calculations, simulations or model tests that the dynamic coefficient,  $\Phi_{2,C1}$ , is within the limit described in A.1.5, the launching appliance or the lifeboat shall be arranged with a protective device or system to limit the dynamic coefficient,  $\Phi_{2,C1}$ , as specified.

## A.4 Appliances for escape chutes (Group E.3)

Appliances for launching and recovery of escape chutes shall be in accordance with 6.2 of the LSA code.

# A.5 Appliances for rafts (Group E.4)

TO BE DEVELOPED

## A.6 Appliances for escape lines (Group E.5)

TO BE DEVELOPED

#### **A.7** Appliances for rescue boats (Group E.6)

#### A.7.1 General

Launching and recovery of rescue boats may be performed by general purpose offshore cranes or dedicated rescue boat cranes or davits especially designed for such operations.

This clause applies to dedicated rescue boat cranes or davits especially designed for such operations. Reference is made to Annex G for general purpose offshore cranes intended for lifting rescue boats.

This clause also applies to the means of connection that form integral parts of the rescue boat, including their release mechanisms, release systems and anchorage to the hull.

NOTE The requirements in this clause of Annex A apply to launching appliances for lifeboats with one suspension point, with single fall or multiple falls. Other solutions (e.g. multiple suspension points) may also be considered, but at the time of publication of this NORSOK standard, such solutions are not considered sufficiently qualified. Other solutions must be qualified in accordance with 4.15.

The requirements in this clause apply in addition to the requirements in A.1.

The launching and recovery appliances shall be able to operate a fully loaded rescue boat in all positions.

Launching and recovery appliances for rescue boats shall provide a minimum horizontal clearance from the rescue boat to any fixed structure of 8 m for non-ship installations.

The following requirements from NMD Regulation 4 July 2007 No. 853 apply for launching and recovery appliances for rescue boats:

- section 11, 1<sup>st</sup> paragraph; section 11, 4<sup>th</sup> paragraph, including sub clauses a) through d)

The following requirements from NMD Regulations July 2007 No. 853 apply for means of connection and release systems that form integral part of the rescue boat:

• section 9, 2<sup>nd</sup> paragraph, including subclauses c and d

#### A.7.2 Functional and safety requirements for the launching and recovery appliances

TO BE DEVELOPED

#### A.7.3 Means of connection, release mechanism and systems

The requirements herein apply to both the launching/recovery appliance and the rescue boat.

#### A.7.4 Elastic pennant for lifting rescue boat with offshore crane

### A.7.4.1 General

When lifting a rescue boat (group E.6) with offshore crane, an elastic pennant shall be utilised in order to limit the dynamic impact acting on the load bearing structural parts of the boat and the personnel on board.

The elastic pennant shall be selected and dedicated for the particular rescue boat to be lifted.

The elastic pennant shall consist of a single legged sling made from 8-strand plaited construction man made fibre rope in accordance with EN 1492-4.

NOTE Other rope constructions may also be considered, but at the time of publication of this NORSOK standard, this is the most commonly used rope construction for this purpose and other constructions are not considered sufficiently qualified. Other rope constructions must be qualified in accordance with 4.15.

The sling shall have spliced eyes with thimbles and permanent fittings in both ends. Consideration shall be given to the weight of end-connections and risk of entanglement and harm to personnel operating the equipment.

Links, rings etc used as means of connection in the lower end of the pennant shall be designed such that incorrect attachment and snagging hazards are avoided.

### A.7.4.2 Working load limit (WLL)

The working load limit, WLL<sub>R002A</sub> (tonnes), for an elastic pennant including its end fittings shall be equal to or greater than the gross mass of the fully equipped rescue boat with its full complement of persons.

NOTE The WLL for elastic pennants for rescue boats is labelled with the index "R002A" in order to distinguish it from lifting slings for general service.

#### A.7.4.3 Safety factors

Ropes for elastic pennants shall be selected with the specified minimum breaking load, MBL (tonnes) and static spring rate in order to satisfy the following requirements for static and dynamic safety factors:

Static safety factor, SF<sub>Stat</sub>, is the ratio between the 90 % of MBL and WLL:

$$SF_{Stat} = \frac{90\% MBL}{WLL_{R002A} \cdot g} \tag{A.18}$$

where

MBL is the specified minimum breaking load (in kN) for the fibre rope used in the elastic pennant  $g = 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2$  is the acceleration of gravity.

Ropes for elastic pennants shall be selected with MBL giving a static safety factor not less than 10.

Dynamic safety factor, SF<sub>Dyn</sub>, is a minimum required safety factor based on dynamic factor, partial safety factor, risk coefficient and rope resistance factor as follows:

$$SF_{Dyn} = \phi \cdot \gamma_p \cdot \gamma_n \cdot \gamma_{rb} \tag{A.19}$$

where

 $\gamma_p$  is the partial safety factor

 $\gamma_p = 1.34$  for load combination A

 $\gamma_p = 1.1$  for load combination C

 $\gamma_n = 1.5$  is the risk coefficient as described in 5.9

 $\gamma_{\rm \tiny ph}=2.3$  is the rope resistance factor for fibre ropes

$$\phi=1+rac{V_R}{g}\sqrt{rac{K_s}{WLL_{_{R002A}}}}$$
 is the dynamic factor for pickup of rescue boat from sea

 $V_{\rm R} = 0.5 \times V_{\rm WLL} + \sqrt{V_{\rm D}^2 + V_{\rm C}^2} ~~{\rm is~the~relative~velocity~(in~m/s)~between~rescue~boat~and~hook~at~pick-up}$ 

where

 $V_{\it WLL}$  (m/s) is the maximum steady state hoisting velocity the crane is able to lift the rescue boat

 $V_{\scriptscriptstyle D}$  (m/s) is given by expression (A.4) in A.1.5.6

 $V_{C}$  (m/s) is given by expression (A.5) in A.1.5.6

 $K_s$  is the static spring rate (in kN/m) for the elastic pennant

NOTE The dynamic factor,  $\phi$ , is only dependent on the characteristics of the fibre rope used in the elastic pennant, in addition to the relative velocity and WLL. For the purpose of calculating the dynamic factor, the crane is assumed to be indefinitely stiff.

The dynamic factor,  $\Phi$ , and the dynamic safety factor,  $SF_{Dyn}$ , shall be calculated for load combinations (LC) And C. where

LCA is pick-up of rescue boat from sea in the NLS condition

LCC is pick-up of rescue boat from sea in the LS condition

It is assumed that the offshore crane is designed with sufficient hoisting/lowering velocity to avoid re-entry in the LS condition.

The dynamic safety factor, SF<sub>Dvn</sub>, shall not exceed the static safety factor, SF<sub>Stat</sub>, in any load combination.

The dynamic factor,  $\phi$ , shall not exceed 2,5 for LCA and 3,0 for LCC.

NOTE Increasing the static safety factor contributes to increased operational risk when handling the elastic pennant in rough seas due to heavier equipment and larger dimensions. A higher static safety factor also gives less elasticity, i.e. increases the dynamic factor. Keeping the static safety factor as low as possible is therefore desirable, although not less than 10.

#### A.7.4.4 Static spring rate

Static spring rate and static stiffness is defined as follows:

Spring rate, K: The ratio of change in tension (force) to change in length:  $K = \Delta F/\Delta L$  (kN/m)

Stiffness, S: The non-dimensional form of spring rate, given as ratio of change in tension  $\Delta F$  to

minimum breaking load (MBL) divided by the ratio of stretch to original length:

 $S = (\Delta F/MBL)/(\Delta \tilde{L/L_0})$ 

Static spring rate, K<sub>s</sub>: Spring rate during subsequent loading less than or up to highest previously

applied load (kN/m)

Static stiffness, S<sub>s</sub>: Stiffness during subsequent loading less than or up to highest previously applied

load.

Reference is also made to definitions, terminology and explanations of change in length behaviour of fibre ropes given in DNV-OS-E303, Sec.4, and Appendix A.

The static spring rate is determined from the dimensionless static stiffness as follows:

$$K_s = S_s \times MBL/L_0 \tag{A.20}$$

The static stiffness of the fibre rope used in the elastic pennant shall be based on a rope that has been preloaded to 25 % of MBL.

For the purpose of simplified calculations, the static spring rate may be based on a linear curve crossing the static spring rate at 20 % of MBL.

For the purpose of calculating the static spring rate, length of the pennant shall taken as length between splices.

## A.7.4.5 Testing

Test requirements given in EN 1492-4 shall apply with the following additional requirements:

The manufacturer of elastic pennants shall perform type tests in accordance with EN 1492-4, 6.3, on each nominal rope size

NOTE This requirement is complementary to the requirement for general purpose slings, for which representative type test are performed for groups of sizes

Prototype tests of the fibre rope shall be performed on each nominal rope size to determine the static stiffness (Ss - kN/m) for the fibre rope that has been pre-loaded to 25 % of MBL.

The manufacturing test specified in EN 1492-4, 6.5, shall be performed on at least one sample of elastic pennant made from the same rope drum.

#### A.7.4.6 Marking

In addition to the marking specified in EN 1492-4, clause 7, the sling shall be labelled "R-002A Elastic pennant". The label shall also be marked with the maximum steady state hoisting velocity (m/s) for which the elastic pennant is intended to lift the rescue boat.

#### A.7.4.7 Certificate

The manufacturer's certificate for the elastic pennant shall be labelled "R-002A Elastic pennant" in addition to the information required in EN 1492-4, clause 8.

The certificate shall state the maximum steady state hoisting velocity (in m/s) for which the elastic pennant is intended to lift the rescue boat.

The certificate shall identify the rescue boat which the elastic pennant is intended to lift.

## A.7.4.8 Calculation example

An informative example of how to select diameter and length of the elastic pennant is given in Annex I.

## A.7.5 Instructions for use of elastic pennants

Elastic pennants shall be accompanied with instructions for use as specified in Annex A and Annex C (as appropriate) of EN 1492-4. In addition the following instructions shall be stated:

- this elastic pennant is intended for lifting and lowering the rescue boat as stated in the certificate only.
   Any other use of the elastic pennant is prohibited;
- this elastic pennant shall only be used to lift the rescue boat in a straight lift. No choking is allowed:
- this elastic pennant is intended for use in training operations in wave conditions up to and including 3 m significant wave height. It is also intended for real rescue operations in wave conditions up to and including 6 m significant wave height;
- a thorough examination shall be performed after each training operation;
- the elastic pennant shall be replaced immediately if it has been used in rescue operations in wave conditions exceeding 3 m significant wave height;
- the elastic pennant shall be replaced every second year, regardless of condition as determined by visual examination.

## A.7.6 Load bearing parts of rescue boats

## A.7.6.1 General

The proof of competence shall be carried out in accordance with A.1.3, A.1.7 and A.1.8 for means of connection and their anchorage points which are integral part of the rescue boat.

## A.7.6.2 Load combinations

For the purpose of proof calculations, the mass of hoist load shall be taken as the weight of the fully equipped rescue boat with its full complement of persons (crew and passengers).

The following load combinations shall be applied to rescue boats:

## Load combination A:

Pick-up from sea in the NLS condition.

- Dynamic factor:  $\Phi_2 = 2.5$
- Partial safety factor: γ<sub>p</sub> = 1,34
- Risk coefficient: γ<sub>n</sub> = 1,5

## Load combination C:

Pick-up from sea in the LS condition.

- Dynamic factor:  $\Phi_2 = 3.0$
- Partial safety factor:  $\gamma_p = 1,1$
- Risk coefficient:  $\gamma_n = 1,5$

## A.7.7 Instructions for use of offshore cranes

The crane shall be equipped with a detailed instruction for rescue boat operations. The instruction shall be summarised in a procedure for training and emergency operations. The procedure shall be included in the emergency preparedness plan for the installation.

The procedure for rescue boat operations shall include, but not be limited to

- authority and responsibility for involved personnel,
- · planning and precautions,
- announcement routines,
- · crane information,
- · rescue boat information,
- · any equipment to be used,
- · manning and personnel qualifications,
- · personnel safety equipment,
- communication equipment and procedure,
- operational limitations, including dynamic load charts which describe the option for deliberate exceeding the suppliers recommendation during emergency operations.

A dynamic load chart shall be calculated for the actual rescue boat that is to be lifted.

The dynamic load chart shall clearly state the conditions upon which it is based and, if relevant, the type and specification of the elastic fibre rope sling that is to be used.

The dynamic load chart shall differentiate between training operations and emergency operations.

NOTE In an emergency where the offshore crane is to be used for handling the rescue boat, it is to be noted that this operation has to be authorised by the installation management in each case. In an emergency situation the operational risks as well as the technical risks for the rescue team have to be balanced against the actual conditions and the probability of a successful rescue operation.

#### A.7.8 Instructions for use of dedicated rescue boat cranes or davits

The rescue boat crane or davit shall be equipped with a detailed instruction for rescue boat operations. The instruction shall be summarised in a procedure for training and emergency operations. The procedure shall be included in the emergency preparedness plan for the installation.

The procedure for rescue boat operations shall include but not be limited to

- authority and responsibility for involved personnel,
- · planning and precautions,
- announcement routines,
- · crane/davit information,
- setting of personnel lift mode,
- rescue boat information,
- any equipment to be used,
- manning and personnel qualifications,
- personnel safety equipment,
- communication equipment and procedure,
- operational limitations, including dynamic load charts which describe the option for deliberate exceeding the suppliers recommendation during emergency operations.

A dynamic load chart shall be calculated for the actual rescue boat that is to be lifted. The calculation shall take into account the applicable damping effect of an elastic sling, motion compensator or shock absorber.

The dynamic load chart shall clearly differentiate between training operations and emergency operations.

NOTE In an emergency where the crane or davit is to be used for handling the rescue boat, this operation has to be authorised by the installation management in each case. In such situations the operational risks as well as the technical risks for the rescue team, have to be balanced against the actual conditions and the probability of a successful rescue operation.

## A.8 Personnel transfer carriers (Group E.7)

Personnel transfer carriers shall be designed to be picked up from a supply vessel to a fixed platform in a sea state corresponding to significant wave height (Hs) of at least 3 m.

The proof of competence for personnel transfer carriers and its dedicated lifting sets shall be performed in accordance with Annex F, as described for group F.5, taking into account:

- the weight W specified in Annex F is the maximum gross mass (tonnes), corresponding to the sum of:
  - o tara weight (tonnes) of the basket,
  - o pay load (tonnes) of the basket, taken as at least:

```
payload = n·(mp + me)
```

where

n is the number of persons allowed in the carrier and shall not be less than 2 mp  $\geq$  0,100 tonnes is the minimum mass of each person

me ≥ 0,040 tonnes is the minimum mass of luggage or other equipment for each person

- the design factor (DF) given in F.5.2.3.8 shall be increased by multiplying with a factor of 1,5.
- unless detailed calculations of the dynamic amplification factor (DAF) justifies other values when the
  carrier is lifted from a supply vessel to the intended installation at the intended sea states, DAF shall be
  as specified for offshore lifting in F.5.2.3.5;
- if the weight W is less than 2 tonnes, the proof of competence shall be made for W = 2 tonnes;
- the crane hoisting speed shall be assumed no less than 2 m/s.

The carrier shall be designed for lifting personnel that are sitting.

The seats shall be equipped with seat belts that are easy to disconnect.

The carrier shall be designed to protect passengers from harmful accelerations/decelerations when the carrier is subjected to a vertical impact speed of minimum 4 m/s due to relative speed between boat deck and carrier at lift off or landing, and when the carrier is subjected to a horizontal impact speed of minimum 2 m/s due to swinging against an obstruction. A damaged carrier may be acceptable when subjected to the horizontal impact, but the load bearing capacity shall not be reduced.

The carrier shall be designed to facilitate transport of at least one injured person on a stretcher together with medical personnel.

The carrier shall be equipped with two dedicated lifting sets with independent lifting points in the carrier and with independent top links. The top links to be attached to the crane hook should have minimum internal dimensions  $270 \text{ mm} \times 140 \text{ mm}$ . Each individual lifting set shall be designed for the full load when calculated in accordance with the above requirements. The lifting sets shall be permanently attached to independent lifting points of the carrier with means requiring tools to remove.

The length of the lifting sets shall be sufficient to allow necessary slack-off after landing on a vessel deck to prevent snagging due to vessel motions.

The carrier must be designed to protect the passengers from entangling with the lifting sets or the crane hook after landing on a vessel deck.

The carrier must be designed to float in an upright position if immersed into the sea.

## Annex B (Normative) Material handling principles

## **B.1** Concept principles

Material handling principles cover all activities related to handling of goods and materials to and from and on the installation in all phases of its lifetime.

The installation shall be designed to ensure that the number of lifting operations is minimized, and with sufficient lay-down, storage areas and transportation routes for safe and efficient operation of the installation. Due consideration shall be given to the different phases of use of the installation, including all operations, regular maintenance, shutdowns for major overhaul and simultaneous operations.

All transportation routes shall be planned without any obstructions and thresholds. Transportation routes shall be dimensioned for the weight and size of equipment that will be transported to and from the area.

Operators of lifting appliances shall have a clear view of load and handling areas in regular use.

When designing areas for maintenance, the safest lifting equipment and lifting concepts shall take preference. Concepts for material handling that are impervious to weather conditions, shall take preference.

In order to avoid unnecessary shut down of process systems in the operation period, the installation shall be designed with safe lifting and transport routes for all equipment that has to be dismantled regularly for service, testing and control, see B.3.3.

Priorities of preference for lifting equipment are as follows:

- a) Forklift trucks/personnel and gods lifts/lorries with cranes/mobile cranes.
- b) Permanent crane/lifting foundations.
- c) Temporary/other mobile lifting equipment.
- d) Rigging equipment.

Due consideration shall be given to the effect of motions on floating installations, vibrations from other equipment. In addition, the environment shall be considered, in areas where material handling equipment is used and stored.

The criticality and economic importance of the load (special process equipment), shall be reflected when selecting lifting and transport equipment to handle the load, e.g. additional lifting and braking systems and emergency lowering facilities, see 4.11.4 and 5.1.1.

Bulk hose transfer stations on offshore installations shall be designed with hoses on power driven hose reels or similar solution, preferably with an automatic connection system on the supply vessel.

## **B.2** General requirements

Projects for development of new installations shall establish the following documents:

- general material handling philosophy in accordance with B.5;
- offshore crane study in accordance with B.6, if relevant;
- material handling plan in accordance with B.7.

The project shall ensure that necessary documentation from suppliers is incorporated into the documents.

Modification projects shall update existing philosophies, studies and plans, if relevant.

If the installation consists of more than one deck elevation, and is permanently manned, it shall be equipped with a sufficient number of personnel and goods lifts. The size and capacity of these lifts shall be adjusted to the size/weight of the largest/heaviest items to be transported by the lift, but the minimum capacity shall be 1

500 kg. The goods lift shall give access to the main transportation routes at all deck levels. Good access to main workshop/stores shall be given priority.

Lifting of equipment of more than 25 kg shall be done by means of mechanical lifting.

If lifting or transporting of loads weighing more than 25 kg is required, there shall be enough space for the use of lifting and transportation gear.

Permanent arrangements (e.g. monorails, lifting lugs) shall be installed for material handling of equipment/objects > 200 kg and which require regular maintenance, if it not reachable for a fork lift truck or other movable lifting appliances.

Minimum requirements for material handling of equipment is given in Table B.1.

Table B.1 - Requirements for material handling

Weight	Maintenance interval				
	Yearly	2 years to 5 years	> 5 years		
25 kg to 200 kg	Α	В	С		
200 kg to 3 tonnes	Α	В	В		
> 3 tonnes	Α	Α	А		

## Key

- A: Permanently installed lifting arrangements, e.g. monorails/pad eyes.
- B: A description (material handling plan) for material handling of equipment with use of temporary lifting equipment. The plan shall include documentation of structural capacity of all lifting points of more than 200 kg.
- C: No requirements for documentation of material handling.

Lifting equipment intended for infrequent use, but exposed to wind, rain, snow or sea spray, shall be designed for easy and safe dismantling, re-installation and storage in warehouse.

Permanently installed lifting equipment, which are exposed to wind, rain, snow or sea spray, shall be designed with extra protection against corrosion, and preferably be parked/stored in a weather protected garage.

When installing lifting equipment near flares, burners and exhaust outlets on the installations, due consideration shall be given to the effects of thermal exposure on the lifting equipment during the lifetime of the installation, e.g. on sensitive electric components, non-metallic materials, steel wire ropes, ventilation of cabin, oil temperature etc.

## Offshore cranes

The offshore cranes shall be located in places which give the best combination of crane coverage and a clear view of the handling areas and supply vessels from the operator cabins.

The offshore cranes shall cover the deck area and lay down/storage and handling areas including the entire pipe deck (installations with drilling or work-over facilities only). For offshore installations with more than one offshore crane, common lay down areas that are reachable by two offshore cranes, shall be provided. On floating installations, lay down areas close to the crane pedestals shall be avoided.

The offshore cranes shall have the outreach necessary to avoid offlead in conjunction with handling of loading hoses to/from supply vessels.

The offshore cranes, including crane hooks, shall not be planned used as hang-off points for other material handling equipment.

Offshore crane boom rests shall be provided.

A dedicated area with access for maintenance (e.g. replacement of crane hooks and steel wire ropes), with an arrangement for storage of main load and whip line hooks, shall be provided. The need for a separate working platform for this purpose shall be considered.

A device for load testing of the main cranes should be installed in the deck structure, if specified by the crane manufacturer.

## B.3 Working areas

#### B.3.1 General

Main lay down areas for regular material handling shall be clearly visible from the control station of the lifting appliances that handles loads to and from such areas.

Remotely operated lifting operations where no personnel are exposed to suspended loads when the load is automatically connected and disconnected, can be performed when supervised (observed) by a camera.

The working areas shall be designed to withstand the loads that will be placed in the area. Working areas and lay down areas shall normally be located in a safe zone and provided with heavy-duty barriers to prevent damage to adjacent equipment.

On floating installations, attachment points for sea fastening of cargo shall be provided. Lifting appliances and their working areas shall be located so as to minimise the risk of load handling, impacts and dropped object damage to systems and structures.

Information regarding the extension and weight capacities of working and lay-down areas shall be available to the operator of the crane in use.

Lay down areas shall be designed such that the signaller and slinger easily can escape to a safe position.

On offshore installations, hose loading stations and rescue boat shall be visible from the offshore crane cabins if the rescue boat is to be launched by offshore crane.

Walls close to working areas and lay down areas should as far as possible have clean surfaces without obstructions, e.g. flood lights, cable trays, piping, etc.

## **B.3.2** Bumpers

Suitable bumpers for impact protection against horizontal and vertical loads shall be provided where necessary in the working and lay down areas where lifting equipment is used. The impact protection shall have a flexible design to absorb the energy induced by the lifting appliances and their loads without being permanently damaged, and shall facilitate means for personnel escape in danger zones. Bumpers shall preferable be made of vertical elements facing the load handling area to prevent loads from snagging the bumper.

Suitable bumpers for swinging loads shall be provided for protection of escape routes, lighting fixtures, instrumentation, piping and other equipment near the working and storage areas. On floating installations, working and lay down areas shall be equipped with reinforced impact protection, designed to take up the loads induced by the installation's motions and the motions induced by the lifting appliances.

## B.3.3 Lifting zones

The term "dropped object" in this subclause means the full load or parts of the load falling as a consequence of a mechanical or system failure.

Within the defined lifting zones, equipment, piping containing hydrocarbons, flammable or toxic gas/liquids and high voltage and cables shall be protected against dropped objects.

All areas within the working area of lifting appliances shall be evaluated and classified according to the consequences of dropped objects, and this shall be reflected in the lifting restriction charts for the installation, see B.5.

Red areas

Areas where the consequence of dropped object is unacceptable to the installation or to personnel, and lifting is not permitted. Typical examples are unprotected process equipment areas, areas with personnel and areas with critical components or equipment without dropped object protection or protecting structures.

Yellow areas

Areas where the consequence of dropped objects is serious for the installation and for personnel. A risk assessment shall be performed, and lifting shall be according to strict procedures only. Typical examples are process equipment areas and normally manned areas protected against dropped objects.

Green areas

Areas planned and laid out for routine lifting operations. No restriction for routine lifts.

Predefined lifting zones should be defined as green areas. Areas where lifting will be performed, shall as a minimum be defined as yellow or green. All yellow areas shall have predefined lifting restrictions according to the loads expected to be handled in or above the area.

The working areas and dropped object protection devices shall be checked for impact from dropped objects according to the accidental limit state defined in NORSOK N-004. The impact loads for design of the deck area and protection devices shall be selected in accordance with relevant weight, size and drop height expected for the specific location.

Lifting operations in red areas (e.g. over well equipment) can be allowed if the lifting equipment is constructed for lifting operations, where the severity of possible harm or extended harm, is high. As a minimum, the following requirements shall be complied with:

- lifting appliances shall be fitted with two independent hoisting mechanisms with independent control systems:
- · each of the hoisting mechanism shall be able to handle the load independently of the other;
- · performance levels shall be higher than normal load handling levels.

For such lifting operations, a risk assessment has to be carried out in addition to the above requirements.

## B.3.4 Shafts/hatches

Vertical handling of loads in shafts should preferably be by use of personnel and goods lift.

Shafts that will be used for lifting operations shall be designed in such a way that loads cannot get trapped or stuck.

Hatches that are opened and closed frequently should be hinged. Hatches shall be designed with a dedicated system for closing/opening and be arranged for securing in open position.

## B.3.5 Lifting operations between installation and vessel

Unprotected critical equipment that can be damaged by falling loads (e.g. risers, pipelines, cables, subsea wellheads and equipment) shall not be installed in areas on and by the side of installations intended for loading and unloading of vessels. There shall be no drain or liquid outlets in the area that can harm the vessel or persons on board. There shall be no exhaust outlets in the area that can harm lifting appliance or lifting wire and reduce the view of the vessel. The installation shall be designed without obstructions that reduce the view of the vessel from the lifting appliance.

## **B.3.6** Transportation routes

Primarly, transportation of equipment on the installation shall be done by machine driven vehicles (e.g. forklift trucks on offshore installations, lorries at onshore installations) or manually operated trolleys.

The main transportation routes on an offshore installation should be designed for forklift trucks with a minimum capacity of 1 500 kg. To avoid unnecessary use of barriers, main gangways at the installation shall not be crossing under or be placed near the lifting routes of main lay down areas.

The need for protection barriers along transportation routes intended for transportation of large/heavy equipment, and in locations where forklift trucks are used, shall be evaluated. The protection barriers shall not obstruct access to equipment, valves, etc.

Entrances directly into transportation routes, shall be designed to avoid hazardous situations, such as collisions between personnel, transport equipment, automatic doors etc.

Transportation routes shall be sized to allow transportation of the largest/heaviest item from its location to the lay down area.

Transportation routes shall, where required, be designed for special transportation remedies, such as heavy lifts and/or forklift trucks, air film transporters etc. Transportation routes shall not contain steps or thresholds.

## B.4 Material handling in a project

In parallel with the engineering of the installation, the engineering of lifting equipment for maintenance shall be carried out.

The feasibility of the material handling shall preferably be verified and documented by use of 3-D design tools.

Permanent lifting equipment shall preferably be installed and certified early in the construction phase, enabling its use during the rest of the construction phase; hence verifying the suitability and the safety of the lifting equipment.

Facilities, including safe access for maintenance, inspection and testing of essential elements and functions, shall be provided.

## B.5 General material handling philosophy – Concept phase

A general philosophy for material handling in the project/module/installation shall be developed and approved by the company early in the concept phase. It shall be revised as the design changes, and finally issued as an as-built version.

The material handling philosophy shall as a minimum describe the following:

- a) main material handling equipment, e.g. main cranes, goods lift, mobile lifting beams, forklift truck, mobile cranes, lorries with cranes etc. including sizes and capacities;
- b) main material handling routes: to and from warehouse, to and from workshops, to and from pipe deck, to and from drill floor, to and from kitchen, to and from supply vessel, to and from quay, to and from
- c) geteign criteria for all transport routes/roads and parking spaces for mobile cranes, e.g. minimum axle load, free width and free height;
- d) lifting restriction charts for the installation, including philosophy for lifting across process areas;
- e) maximum allowable lifting heights, coverage and restrictions for the main cranes;
- f) lay down and storage areas including function, size and location, also covering lay down/storage areas for and handling of temporary, company provided and hired equipment;
- g) lifting areas, including sketches, which are not visible from the crane cabins;
- h) weather constraints (waves and wind);
- i) definition of largest/heaviest item to be handled per area including description of transportation route and type of handling equipment;
- j) deck load/ground capacities on all areas in the installation. Both loading areas, transport routes and areas between equipment. The deck load/ground capacities shall include allowable evenly distributes load, point loads, drop loads and forklift truck capacities, see also B.3.3;
- k) evaluation of concurrent crane operations on pipe deck can be verified and documented by 3D design tool:
- l) requirements for dropped object protection;
- m) goods handling to/from helideck;
- n) load categories for monorails, hoists and pad eyes;
- o) requirements for use of rigging equipment and loose lifting equipment at the installation;

- p) material handling through shafts and hatches;
- q) standardization of the lifting equipment, limiting the number of different types of equipment.

## B.6 Offshore crane study – Engineering phase

An offshore crane study document, based on the principles of the material handling philosophy, shall be prepared and maintained throughout the engineering phase. The feasibility of the material handling by means of the offshore crane shall be verified and documented by use of 3-D design tools. The document shall as a minimum contain the following elements:

- a) definition of all relevant documents for transmittal to the authorities;
- b) basis for location of offshore cranes and other main cranes:
- c) visibility of lay down areas, and exceptions, if any;
- d) description of handling with offshore cranes to and from the supply vessels and internally on the
- e) tistisiques; the most common lifting operations including frequency of these;
- f) description of safe lifting routes for the most common lifting operations;
- g) height of crane cabins above the most elevated crane-handling area;
- h) description of maximum allowable lifting heights, coverage and restrictions;
- i) requirements for dropped object protection;
- j) description of crane outfitting related to safety, alarms, communication, lightning, etc.;
- k) description of situations where the crane booms shall be brought to the rest position and the frequency of these:
- I) description of weather constraints (waves and wind);
- m) evaluation of concurrent crane operations on pipe deck;
- n) description of crane operations involving transportation of personnel, e.g. rescue boat, personnel basket,
- o) description of operational range, safe lifting routes and lay down areas for offshore cranes, if offshore cranes are to be used for transferring loads from one side of the installation to the other;
- p) description of protection against heat radiation from flare, burners and exhaust outlets on crane cabins, crane systems and wires;
- q) plot plan showing:
  - 1) crane locations,
  - 2) offshore crane operation range with and without jib, minimum radius and radius for heaviest lift,
  - 3) maximum allowable lifting heights,
  - 4) maximum weight capacities for lay down areas and transportation ways,
  - 5) lay down areas, including allowable loads (areas not visible from the crane cabin shall be highlighted),
  - 6) hose loading stations,
  - 7) tote tank area,
  - 8) access and transportation ways, including allowable loads,
  - 9) permanent and temporary restriction areas,
  - 10) dropped object protection,
  - crane maintenance platform(s), including location for facilities for re-reeving and replacement of wire rope,
  - 12) storage for crane hooks,
  - 13) crane boom rests,
  - 14) rescue boat.

## B.7 Material handling plan

The material handling philosophy, in the final as-built version, shall be included in the material handling plan.

This material handling plan shall identify all equipment that needs to be handled, and describe the method, equipment and the transport route to be used when lifting out the unit, transporting it to its destination, and replacing it. The document shall be part of the operational documentation for the installation.

Equipment of more than 25 kg and that requires regular maintenance according to B.2, Table B.1 or replacement during the design life of the installation, shall be included in the document.

When modifying the installation, the material handling plan shall be revised to reflect any changes made to areas, systems, equipment or lifting/transport facilities.

The material handling plan shall as a minimum contain the following:

- a) description of all material handling equipment, e.g. main cranes, personnel and goods lift, fork lift trucks, trolleys, air film transporters, elephant cranes, A-frames, mobile cranes, lorries with cranes etc. including tag numbers (when required), sizes and capacities;
- description of standardized sizes of foundations and suspensions for lifting equipment, as applicable, see Annex H;
- c) requirements for certification and marking of foundations and suspensions;
- d) description of the main material handling philosophy for internal transport on the installation;
- e) description of function, size and location of lay down and storage areas including areas for and handling of temporary, company provided and hired equipment;
- f) description of all items of more than 25 kg to be handled, including identification numbers, location, weight, size, expected maintenance/replacement intervals, type of lifting equipment/arrangement, lifting/handling procedure, transport route etc. In cases where the equipment vendor has incorporated comprehensive handling procedures in the maintenance manual, this can be referred to in the report. The material handling description for such equipment can be simplified by just defining the required lifting/transportation equipment and transport routes;
- g) requirements for transportation routes/roads including width and height in the different areas;
- h) description of goods handling to/from helicopter deck, if applicable;
- i) description of loading hose handling including hose replacement;
- j) description of areas where special protection of equipment is required, e.g. dropped object protection, truck barriers, swinging load protection etc.;
- k) material handling drawings based on equipment arrangement drawings or 3D plots including piping and valves containing the following:
  - 1) all equipment to be handled including lifting lugs, monorails, access ways etc.;
  - table containing all equipment identification numbers to be handled with corresponding identification numbers for the lifting equipment to be used;
  - 3) load capacities for lay down areas and transportation routes/roads.

# Annex C (Normative) Lifting accessories – Group (G11)

## C.1 General

Lifting accessories incorporates loose lifting gear and lifting components. Lifting components are components used as integral parts of lifting appliances and/or as part of loose lifting gear.

The requirements of this Annex apply in addition to the requirements stated in Clause 1 to Clause 5.

Lifting accessories made in accordance with this annex are only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is only intended for groups or sub groups where such lifting is explicitly stated for the particular group or sub group in this annex.

## C.2 Group overview

The following groups of lifting accessories are covered by this annex:

Group no.	Group type	Sub. groups	Test requirements
			(see C.7.1)
R1	Chain sling	Sling with or without hook in the leg ends. Single and multiple legs.	1
R2	Fibre sling	Flat woven webbing slings and round slings.	1
R3	Steel wire Rope sling	<ul> <li>Sling with or without hook in the leg ends. Single and multiple legs.</li> </ul>	2 or 3 4
	3	- Grommets	
R4	Loose lifting	- Shackles	1
	equipments	- Eye bolts/nuts	1
		- Clamps	1
		- Lifting forks	1
R5	Spreader	- Spreader beam, lifting beam, lifting frames	1, 2 or 4
	and special	- Pad eye flange	2 or 4
	designs	- Magnet lifter	1
		- Vacuum lifter	1
		- Mechanical gripper	1
R6	Load carrier	- Baskets for use on shore and internally offshore (inboard).	2
	- Big bag intended for multiple lifting and single lifts		
		NOTE Offshore load carriers – see Annex F.	

Group no.	Group type	Sub. groups	Test requirements
			(see C.7.1)
R7	Forerunner/ pennant offshore crane	- Single and double legs	2 or 3
R8	Elastic forerunner/ pennant for MOB (fast rescue craft)		See A.7.4
R9	Lifting	- Chains	1
	components	- Wire ropes	1
		- Hooks	1
		- Links and joining devices	1
		- Open/closed spelter socket	N/A, see C.9.5
		- Wedge socket	1
		- Swivels	1
		- Turn buckle	1
		<ul> <li>Pulley blocks and hook blocks, single and multiple sheaves</li> </ul>	1
		- Deflection pulleys	N/A
		- Wire rope grips.	19/73
R10	Special	- Lifting nipple/caps/subs	2 or 3
	designed lifting	- Elevators	5
	accessories	- Bails/links	5
	in drilling area	- Handling/running/hanger tools used for lifting	2, 4 or 5
R11	Carriers for	- Suspended work platform for internal use (work	2
	lifting persons	basket)	N/A
	persons	<ul> <li>Stretcher intended for lifting of personnel using lifting appliances.</li> </ul>	3 x gross mass
		- Personnel transfer carrier	1
		- Man riding harness	

## C.3 Structure of requirements

The requirements in this annex are structured as follows for each group and sub group of lifting accessories:

## Normative references

Requirements given in normative references listed under each group and sub group of lifting accessories apply to

- · design,
- · materials,
- fabrication/manufacturing processes, tolerances and testing,
- · information for use and maintenance,
- manufacturer's certificate,
- marking.

#### **Complementary requirements:**

Complementary requirements apply in addition to the requirements given in the normative references. In some cases, when particularly stated, the complementary requirements except or replace requirements given in the normative references. Complementary requirements are stated with reference to

- design
- materials,
- fabrication/manufacturing processes, tolerances and testing,
- information for use and maintenance,
- · manufacturer's certificate,
- · marking.

## C.4 Marking

It should be noted that legal marking may be required in addition to the marking requirements of this annex, e.g. CE-marking according to European directives, where such directives apply.

#### C.5 Design

Lifting accessories shall be designed to operate in a minimum operational temperature of -20 °C unless otherwise specified in standards referred to in this annex.

Bolts used in lifting accessories shall as a principle be secured with two mechanisms. Ref. 5.4.9

## C.6 Materials and fabrication

No material grades other than those mentioned in the normative references listed in this annex shall be used, unless explicitly stated in the requirements in this annex.

When requirements for materials or fabrication are given under the specific groups or sub groups of this annex, materials selection and fabrication shall be performed in accordance with 5.22.

## C.7 Load testing and documentation

## C.7.1 Load test requirements

Each manufactured lifting accessory shall be subjected to a proof load test. Alternatively, samples from production may be selected for break load testing, or a design verification by an independent enterprise of competence may be performed. The following alternative test methods for proof load testing are available and should be selected in accordance with the test requirements shown in C.2:

- a) standard component tested in accordance with the normative references during production. No additional test requirements;
- test load 2 x WLL (or 2 x gross mass) (see Table C.1 for series and Table C.2 reduced test load over 25 t);
- c) breaking load test from each batch with end terminations (see Table 1 for series);
- d) design verification of independent enterprise of competence;
- e) according to ISO 13535.

When combining chain components with fibre slings or steel wire rope slings, the whole lifting accessory shall be tested with 2x WLL:

Table C.1 - Test load 2 x WLL for series

Total number of units in a series	Proof load test, number of units to be tested from each series	Breaking load test, number of units to be tested from each batch.
1 to 5	1	1
6 to 10	2	1
11 to 20	3	1
21 to 40	4	1
> 40	10 % unless otherwise agreed	> 1
	with enterprise of competence	To be agreed with enterprise of competence.

Table C.2 - Reduced test load over 25 t

WLL (tonnes)	Static test load (tonnes)
WLL ≤ 25	2 x WLL
25 < WLL ≤ 30	55
30 < WLL ≤ 35	65
35 < WLL ≤ 40	70
40 < WLL ≤ 45	75
45 < WLL ≤ 50	85
50 < WLL ≤ 55	90
55 < WLL ≤ 60	95
60 < WLL ≤ 65	100
65 < WLL ≤ 70	110
70 < WLL ≤ 75	115
75 < WLL ≤ 80	120
80 < WLL ≤ 85	125
85 < WLL ≤ 90	130
90 < WLL ≤ 95	135
95 < WLL ≤ 100	145
100 < WLL ≤ 110	155
110 < WLL ≤ 120	165
120 < WLL ≤ 130	175
130 < WLL ≤ 140	190

WLL (tonnes)	Static test load (tonnes)
140 < WLL ≤ 150	200
150 < WLL ≤ 160	215
160 < WLL ≤ 170	230
170 < WLL ≤ 180	240
WLL > 180	1,33 x WLL
Single sheave block	4 x WLL (test load applied to block head)
Multi sheave block	2 x WLL (test load applied to block head)

#### C.7.2 Documentation

In addition to the technical file required by 5.25, each lifting accessory shall be accompanied by a certificate issued by an enterprise of competence in accordance with NORSOK R-003, Annex E, or NORSOK R-005, as applicable. The certificate shall state the applied test load in accordance with C.7.1.

## C.8 Chain slings (Group R1)

## C.8.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

Chains for chain slings:

See group R9 - Lifting components

## Single-leg and multi-leg slings:

EN 818-4:1996+A1:2008 Short link chain for lifting purposes – Safety – Part 4: Chain slings – Grade 8 EN 818-6:2000+A1:2008 Short link chain for lifting purposes - Safety - Part 6: Chain slings - Specification for information for use and maintenance to be provided by the manufacturer

#### Components for upper and lower terminals of chain slings:

See group R9 - Lifting components

## C.8.2 Complementary requirements for chain slings

## C.8.2.1 Design

Requirements given in the normative references do not give acceptable safety level for slings intended for lifting of portable units to and from supply vessel (sealift offshore). Such slings shall meet the requirements given in Annex F.

Mechanical joining devices of hinged type shall not be used in chain sling assemblies.

NOTE Mechanical joining devices are often referred to as "connecting links".

## C.8.2.2 Materials

All lifting components in chain slings shall be of grade 8.

## C.8.2.3 Information for use and maintenance

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the chain sling is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

## C.8.2.4 Marking

The marking tag and its means of attachment to the sling assembly required by EN 818-4, Clause 7, shall be made of corrosion resistant material. The total weight of the tag and its means of attachment to the sling assembly should have a mass of less than 70 g.

## C.9 Fibre slings (Group R2)

#### C.9.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

EN 1492-1:2000	Textile slings - Safety - Part 1: Flat woven webbing slings, made of man-made fibres,
	for general purpose use - (Corrigendum AC:2006 incorporated)
EN 1492-2:2000	Textile slings - Safety - Part 2: Roundslings, made of man-made fibres, for general
	purpose use - (Corrigendum AC:2006 incorporated)
EN 1492-4:2004	Textile slings - Safety - Part 4: Lifting slings for general service made from natural and
	man-made fibre ropes

## C.9.2 Complementary requirements fibre slings

## C.9.2.1 Design

Lifting slings made from fibre ropes shall have eyes with thimbles. Mechanical joining devices of hinged type shall not be used in fibre sling assemblies.

NOTE Mechanical joining devices are often referred to as "connecting links".

#### C.9.2.2 Manufacturer's certificate

No complementary requirements.

#### C.9.2.3 Information for use and maintenance

For the purpose of complying with this NORSOK standard, the information described in EN 1492-1, Annex D, shall be provided in the manufacturer's instructions for flat woven webbing slings.

For the purpose of complying with this NORSOK standard, the information described in EN 1492-2, Annex C, shall be provided in the manufacturer's instructions for roundslings.

For the purpose of complying with this NORSOK standard, the information described in EN 1492-4, Annex B and Annex C, shall be provided in the manufacturer's instructions for flat fibre rope slings.

The minimum contact diameter for connection to shackles, links or hooks and when the sling is used in choked hitch or basket hitch shall be provided for all types of fibre slings.

For flat woven webbing slings, both minimum and maximum diameter to be inserted in the eyes shall be stated

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the fibre sling is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

## C.9.2.4 Marking

The minimum contact diameter stated in the user manual shall also be marked on the slings. For flat woven webbing slings, the maximum diameter of objects to be inserted in the eyes shall also be marked on the

#### sling C.9.2.5 Material

Fibre slings should as a general rule be made from polyester. However, if fibres slings are intended to be used in alkaline environment, slings made from polypropylene should be preferred.

## C.10 Steel wire rope slings (Group R3)

## C.10.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply: Steel wire ropes for slings:
See group R9 – Lifting components

#### Single-leg and multi-leg slings:

EN 13414-1:2003+A2:2008 Steel wire rope slings - Safety - Part 1: Slings for general lifting service EN 13414-2:2003+A2:2008 Steel wire rope slings - Safety - Part 2: Specification for information for use and maintenance to be provided by the manufacturer

EN 13414-3:2003/AC:2004 Corrigendum AC - Steel wire rope slings - Safety - Part 3: Grommets and cable-laid slings.

## Termination of steel wire ropes;

EN 13411-1:2002+A1:2008 Terminations for steel wire ropes - Safety - Part 1: Thimbles for steel wire

rope slings

EN 13411-3:2004+A1:2008 Terminations for steel wire ropes - Safety - Part 3: Ferrules and ferrulesecuring

Components for upper and lower terminals of steel wire rope slings:

See group R9 - Lifting components

## C.10.2 Complementary requirements for steel wire rope slings

#### C.10.2.1 Design

Ferrule terminations shall be tapered in the wire end.

Mechanical joining devices of hinged type shall not be used in steel wire rope sling assemblies.

NOTE Mechanical joining devices are often referred to as "connecting links".

Wire rope grips shall not be used as terminations for steel wire rope slings.

Single-leg and two-leg slings used as forerunners/pennants on offshore cranes when lifting to and from supply vessels (sealift offshore) are not covered by this group (R3). Forerunners/pennants shall be group R7

The safety factor (SF) for casing slings shall not be less than 6,0.

For casing sling the following wire type should be used:

<sup>Ø</sup> 20 mm 6 x 36 + 1FC length 8 m - 300 mm soft eyes.

## C.10.2.2 Materials

All components for upper and lower terminals on steel wire rope slings shall be of grade 8.

## C.10.2.3 Fabrication/manufacturing processes, tolerances

## C.10.2.4 Information for use and maintenance

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the steel wire rope sling is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

#### C.10.2.5 Marking

The marking tag and its means of attachment to the sling assembly required by EN 13414-1, clause 7, shall be made of corrosion resistant material. The total weight of the tag and its means of attachment to the sling assembly should have a mass of less than 70 g.

The ferrules in one end of the steel wire ropes forming part of a sling assembly shall be legibly and indelibly marked with the sling manufacturer's name, symbol or mark and the traceability code identifying the sling assembly with the certificate.

When marking is on a load-bearing ferrule or the master link, care must be taken to ensure that the mechanical properties of the ferrule or link are not impaired.

#### C.11 Loose equipment (Group R4)

## C.11.1 Shackles

#### C.11.1.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

EN 13889:2003 Forged steel shackles for general lifting purposes - Dee shackles and bow

shackles - Grade 6 – Safety RR-C-271 U.S. Federal Specification

## C.11.1.2 Complementary requirements for shackles

#### C.11.1.2.1 Design

Shackles shall be a type with double locking, e.g. nut plus split pin.

Requirements given in the normative references do not give acceptable safety level for shackles intended for lifting of portable units to and from supply vessel (sealift offshore). Such shackles shall meet the requirements given in Annex F.

## C.11.1.2.2 Information for use and maintenance

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the shackle is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

C.11.2 Eye bolts/nuts

#### C.11.2.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

EN 1677-1:2000 Components for slings - Safety - Part 1: Forged steel components, Grade 8.

## C.11.2.2 Complementary requirements for eye bolts/nuts

## C.11.2.2.1 Design

The working load limit (WLL) for eye bolts and nuts shall apply in the most unfavourable direction.

The breaking load and proof load stated in the normative references shall be tested with the test load acting both in the direction of the bolt/nut axis and in the most unfavourable direction transverse to the bolt axis.

## C.11.2.2.2 Information for use and maintenance

For eye nuts, information regarding the necessary grade of mating bolt material shall be stated.

Measures for tightening the eye bolt or eye nut shall be stated.

Measures to prevent unscrewing the eye bolt or eye nut shall be stated.

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the eye bolt or nut is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

### C.11.2.2.3 Marking

The eye bolt/nut shall be marked with WLL for the load acting in the most unfavourable direction.

C.11.3 Clamps

## C.11.3.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

EN 13155:2003/A1:2005 Cranes - Safety - Non-fixed load lifting attachments

## C.11.3.2 Complementary requirements for clamps

## C.11.3.2.1 Design

Clamps intended to be used as suspensions on beams shall be designed in accordance with the additional requirements in Annex H.

#### C.11.3.2.2 Materials

Materials shall be selected with steel quality and maximum thickness for resistance to brittle fracture for lowest working temperature -20 °C in accordance with EN 13155, Table A.3.

For clamps intended to be used at lower operating temperatures than -20 °C, materials shall be selected in accordance with C.6.

## C.11.3.2.3 Fabrication

The fabrication requirements in C.6 apply.

#### C.11.3.2.4 Information for use and maintenance

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the clamp is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

#### C.11.4 Lifting forks

#### C.11.4.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

EN 13155:2003/A1:2005, Cranes - Safety - Non-fixed load lifting attachments

## C.11.4.2 Complementary requirements for lifting forks

#### C.11.4.2.1 Materials

Materials shall be selected with steel quality and maximum thickness for resistance to brittle fracture for lowest working temperature -20 °C in accordance with EN 13155, Table A.3.

For lifting forks intended to be used at lower operating temperatures than -20 °C, materials shall be selected in accordance with C.6.

## C.11.4.2.2 Fabrication

The fabrication requirements in C.6 apply.

## C.11.4.2.3 Information for use and maintenance

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the lifting fork is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

## C.12 Spreaders and special design (Group R5)

## C.12.1 Spreader beams, lifting beams and lifting frames

## C.12.1.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

EN 13155:2003/A1:2005, Cranes - Safety - Non-fixed load lifting attachments

## C.12.1.2 Complementary requirements for lifting beams, spreader beams and lifting frames

## C.12.1.2.1 Design

Requirements given in the normative references do not give acceptable safety level for equipment intended for lifting between installation and supply vessel. Such equipment shall meet the requirements given in Annex F.

#### C.11.1.2.2 Materials

Materials shall be selected with steel quality and maximum thickness for resistance to brittle fracture for lowest working temperature -20 °C in accordance with EN 13155, Table A.3.

For equipment intended to be used at lower operating temperatures than -20 °C, materials shall be selected in accordance with C.6.

## C.11.1.2.3 Fabrication

The fabrication requirements in C.6 apply.

#### C.11.1.2.4 Information for use and maintenance

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the equipment is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

#### C.12.2 Pad eye flanges

#### C.12.2.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

Annex F

#### C.12.2.2 Complementary requirements for pad eye flanges

#### C.12.2.2.1 Design

The working load limit (WLL) for pad eye flanges shall be specified in steps corresponding to standardised shackle dimensions, see group R.4.

Pad eye dimensions recommended in Annex J may be used. Pad eye pin holes shall have a diameter for which a pin of standard shackle with corresponding WLL will fit into. The pad eye thickness shall fit into the opening of a standard shackle with corresponding WLL.

The proof of competence for structural strength of pad eye flanges shall be performed in accordance with Annex F, taking into account the dynamic factor as described for platform (inboard) lifts.

A minimum of four bolts shall be used for connection of the pad eye flange to the load.

#### C.12.2.2.2 Materials

Materials shall be selected with steel quality and maximum thickness for resistance to brittle fracture for lowest working temperature -20 °C in accordance with EN 13155, Table A.3.

For equipment intended to be used at lower operating temperatures than -20 °C, materials shall be selected in accordance with C.6.

For plates or flanges transferring forces in the thickness direction, materials with documented through thickness properties shall be used.

Bolts shall have grade 8.8.

## C.12.2.2.3 Fabrication

The fabrication requirements in C.6 apply.

Pad eye shall be welded to the flange by use of full penetration welds. Fillet weld shall not be used.

A static load test shall be performed on each unit with a test load equal to 2·WLL The test load shall be applied in all directions for which the pad eye flanges are intended to be oriented during normal use.

## C.12.2.2.4 Information for use and maintenance

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the equipment is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

Instructions should be given to prevent rotation of the flange and load when lifting with single leg wire rope sling.

Instructions should be given regarding necessary pretension of the bolts needed to ensure metallic contact between flange and load during lifting, and to ensure evenly distribution of load in the bolts.

## C.12.3 Magnet lifter

#### C.12.3.1 General

Magnet lifters are normally designed as lifting beams. Reference is made to section C.5.1 for requirements for the lifting beam. The following subsections describe the requirements for magnet attachments used in magnet lifters.

## C.12.3.2 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

EN 13155:2003/A1:2005, Cranes – Safety – Non-fixed load lifting attachments DNV-OS-E101. Drilling Plant

In case of conflicting requirements in the normative references, the most stringent requirement applies.

#### C.12.3.3 Complementary requirements for magnet lifters

#### C.12.3.3.1 Design

Safety related parts of control systems for operation of magnets, e.g. indicators, warning devices or devices for two-action control, shall fulfil a required performance level C in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1.

For the purpose of complying with this NORSOK standard, any exceptions for "no-go areas" given in EN 13155 are not allowed.

## C.12.3.3.2 Information for use and maintenance

The geometrical shape and range of sizes intended to be lifted with the magnets shall be described in the user instructions. In addition a clear warning shall be stated not to lift other shapes or sizes than those described in the instructions.

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the equipment is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

## C.12.4 Vacuum lifter

#### C.12.4.1 General

Vacuum lifters are normally designed as lifting beams. Reference is made to C.12.1 for requirements for the lifting beam. The following subsections describe the requirements for vacuum attachments in vacuum lifters.

## C.12.4.2 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

EN 13155:2003/A1:2005, Cranes - Safety - Non-fixed load lifting attachments

## C.12.4.3 Complementary requirements for vacuum lifters

Vacuum attachments shall be dimensioned to hold at least a load corresponding to 3 times the working load limit for each attachment at the end of the working range and the beginning of the danger range respectively at all intended angles of tilt.

Non self priming vacuum lifters shall have an indicator that confirms sufficient vacuum for safe lifting.

Safety related parts of control systems for operation of vacuum attachments, e.g. indicators, warning devices or devices for two-action control, shall fulfil a required performance level C in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1.

For the purpose of complying with this NORSOK standard, any exceptions for "no-go areas" given in EN 13155 are not allowed.

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the equipment is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

#### C.12.5 Mechanical gripper for pipe handling

#### C.12.5.1 General

Mechanical grippers are normally part of lifting beams or a lifting appliance. Reference is made to C.12.1 for requirements for the lifting beam. The following subclauses describe the requirements for mechanical grippers used in lifting beams or as permanent load holding devices on lifting appliances.

#### C.12.5.2 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

DNV-OS-E101 Drilling Plant

#### C.12.5.3 Complementary requirements for mechanical grippers for pipe handling

#### C.12.5.3.1 Design

Safety related parts of control systems for operation of mechanical grippers, e.g. indicators, warning devices or devices for two-action control, shall fulfil a required performance level C in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1.

Grippers may be equipped with means for emergency operation in case of power failure. Such means shall require the use of external tools or power source (e.g. hydraulic hand pump) to open the grippers.

## C.12.5.3.2 Information for use and maintenance

The geometrical shape and range of sizes intended to be lifted with the mechanical gripper shall be described in the user instructions. In addition a clear warning shall be stated not to lift other shapes or sizes than those described in the instructions.

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the equipment is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

In case grippers are equipped with means for emergency operation, clear instructions must be given to off-load the grippers and secure the load from falling or uncontrolled movements prior to opening the grippers.

## C.13 Load carriers (Group R6)

## C.13.1. Baskets for onshore plants and internal lifting on offshore installations

## C.13.1.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

Annex F of this NORSOK Standard

EN 1999-1-1 Eurocode 9: Design of aluminium structures - Part 1-1: General structural rules

## C.13.1.2 Complementary requirements for baskets

## C.13.1.2.1 Design

The proof of competence for baskets shall be performed in accordance with Annex F, as described for group F.5, taking into account

- the weight W specified in Annex F is the maximum gross mass (tonnes), corresponding to the sum of
  - · tara weight (tonnes) of the basket,
  - pay load (tonnes) of the basket.
- the dynamic amplification factor (DAF) shall be as specified for inboard/onshore lifting in Annex F.

For the purpose of calculating the structural strength of the basket floor, an evenly distributed load may be assumed.

The floor in the basket shall be drained.

Any door in the side of the basket shall have a locking mechanism to prevent inadvertent opening. The door with hinges and locking mechanism shall be designed to withstand a load corresponding to 25 % of the max gross mass without permanent deformation when applied in the most severe position. Hinges shall have grease nipples.

Baskets shall have pockets for transport with fork lift trucks.

For aluminium baskets, the resistances and resistance factors for materials, members and connecting devices shall be taken from EN 1999-1-1.

#### C.13.1.2.2 Materials

Materials for steel structures shall be selected in accordance with C.6.

Materials for aluminium structures shall be selected in accordance with EN 1999-1-1.

#### C.13.1.2.3 Fabrication

The fabrication requirements in clause C.6 apply.

Each basket shall be tested with a static load corresponding to twice the max gross mass, suspended from the dedicated lifting set.

#### C.13.1.2.4 Information for use and maintenance

Information for use shall be given in compliance with relevant parts of EN 12644-1, as applicable. The instructions must clearly state that the basket is not intended for lifting persons.

A statement should be given in the instructions to inform that the basket is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and vessel is prohibited.

## C.13.1.2.5 Marking

Baskets shall be marked with

- · manufacturer's name and address,
- type designation,
- max gross mass (tonnes),
- payload (tonnes),
- · year of manufacture,
- identification for traceability to manufacturer's certificate,
- warning against lifting between installation and vessel,
- warning against lifting persons.

Marking signs shall be permanently attached to the basket with adequate means to prevent the sign from loosening.

## C.13.2 Intermediate bulk containers and big bags

## C.13.2.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

EN ISO 21898:2005, Packaging - Flexible intermediate bulk containers (FIBCs) for non-dangerous goods

UN Recommendations for transport of dangerous goods

ISO 16467 Packaging - Transport packaging for dangerous goods - Test methods for IBCs

The requirements for certification and marking according to ISO 21989 shall be complied with also for IBCs used for transportation of dangerous goods.

#### C.13.2.2 Marking

Marking signs shall be permanently attached to the equipment with adequate means to prevent the sign from loosening.

## C.14 Forerunner/pennant for offshore crane (Group R7)

#### C.14.1 General

Forerunners/pennants for offshore cranes are intended both for lifting internally within the installation and for lifting between installation and vessel.

## C.14.2 Normative references

The same normative references as listed for group R3 apply.

## C.14.3 Complementary requirements for forerunners/pennants

#### C.14.3.1 Design

Steel wire ropes used in forerunners/pennants shall be of construction 6 x 36.

Spliced eyes shall not be used for termination of steel wire ropes used in forerunners/pennants.

Ferrule-secured eyes shall be fitted with thimbles according to EN 13411-3.

Ferrule terminations shall be tapered in the wire end.

Mechanical joining devices of hinged type shall not be used in steel wire rope sling assemblies.

Hooks with latch according to EN 1677-2 shall not be used.

Hooks shall be of self-locking type in accordance with EN 1677-3. The locking mechanism shall be protected against inadvertent opening due to entanglement with any obstruction during lifting.

Hooks shall have a swivelling element, or swivel of grade 8 according to EN 1677-1 shall be permanently fitted between the hook and the steel wire rope eye. Swivels or swivelling elements of hooks shall incorporate a thrust bearing.

The top link to be attached to the crane hook should have minimum internal dimensions 270 mm x 140 mm.

The components of the forerunners/pennants shall be selected with documented breaking force (BF) as follows:

```
top link, BF = 5,0 x WLL x g
hook, BF = 5,0 x WLL x g
wire, BF = 6,0 x WLL x g for WLL up to and including 10 T.
BF = 5,0 x WLL x g for WLL above 15 T.
```

For WLL between 10 T and 15 T linear interpolation to be used for calculating the BF.

Forerunners/pennants should have a working load limit of at least 8 T. The crane owner may specify a lower working load limit, but not less than 50 % of the cranes rated capacity.

NOTE A working load limit of 8T is typical for a crane with rated capacity 15 T.

## C.14.3.2 Materials

Materials for components for upper and lower terminals of forerunners/pennants shall be selected in accordance with the normative references and the following additional requirements:

- top link shall meet the material requirements given in DNV Standard for Certification No. 2.7-1. Offshore Containers, clause 8.4.
- hooks shall be in accordance with DNV Standard for Certification No. 2.22 Lifting Appliances.

#### C.14.3.3 Information for use and maintenance

The user manual must clearly state that forerunners shall be subjected to thorough examination by a qualified user every 14<sup>th</sup> day. The method of inspection, focus areas and discard criteria shall be described.

#### C.14.3.4 Marking

The complementary requirements listed in C.3.2.6 also apply to forerunners/pennants.

## C.15 Elastic forerunner/pennant for rescue (MOB) boats (Group R8)

## C.15.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

- EN 1492-4:2004+A1:2008, Textile slings Safety Part 4: Lifting slings for general service made from natural and man-made fibre ropes
- EN 1677-4:2000, Components for slings Safety Part 4: Links, Grade 8

## C.15.2 Complementary requirements for elastic forerunners/pennants for rescue boats

#### C.15.2.1 Design

The requirements in A.7.4 and A.7.5 apply to elastic forerunners/pennants for rescue boats.

NOTE A calculation example is shown in Annex I.

## C.15.2.2 Marking

The marking tag and its means of attachment to the sling assembly required by A.7.4.6 shall be made of corrosion resistant material. The total weight of the tag and its means of attachment to the sling assembly should have a mass of less than 70 g.

## C.16 Lifting components (Group R9)

## C.16.1 Chains

## C.16.1.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

- EN 818-1:1996+A1:2008, Short link chain for lifting purposes Safety Part 1: General conditions of acceptance.
- EN 818-2:1996+A1:2008, Short link chain for lifting purposes Safety Part 2: Medium tolerance chain for chain slings – Grade 8.

## C.16.2 Steel wire ropes

## C.16.2.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

- EN 12385-1:2002+A1:2008, Steel wire ropes Safety Part 1: General requirements.
- EN 12385-2:2002+A1:2008, Steel wire ropes Safety Part 2: Definitions, designation and classification
- EN 12385-4:2002+A1:2008, Steel wire ropes Safety Part 4: Stranded ropes for general lifting applications

## C.16.2.2 Complementary requirements for steel wire ropes

## C.16.2.2.1 Marking

The steel wire rope when supplied for installation on a winch drum shall be permanently marked at both

# ends. C.16.3 Hooks for slings

#### C.16.3.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

- EN 1677-1:2000+A1:2008, Components for slings Safety Part 1: Forged steel components, Grade 8.
- EN 1677-3:2000+A1:2008, Components for slings Safety Part 3: Forged steel self-locking hooks -Grade 8

## C.16.4 Links and joining devices

#### C.16.4.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

- EN 1677-1:2000+A1:2008, Components for slings Safety Part 1: Forged steel components, Grade 8. EN 1677-4:2000+A1:2008, Components for slings Safety Part 4: Links, Grade 8

## C.16.4.2 Complementary requirements for links and joining devices

Mechanical joining devices of the hinged type shall not be used.

## C.16.5 Open/close spelter sockets

#### C.16.5.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

• EN 13411-4, Terminations for steel wire ropes - Safety - Part 4: Metal and resin socketing

## C.16.5.2 Complementary requirements for open/close spelter sockets

#### C.16.5.2.1 Design

The socket shall have a minimum breaking load greater than the minimum breaking load of the steel wire rope.

## C.16.5.2.2 Manufacturer's certificate

The socketing manufacturer shall issue a certificate, based on the original rope manufacturer's and socket manufacturer's certificates, containing the following details:

- socketing manufacturer's name and address;
- reference to unique identification mark on the socketed medium, that gives traceability to the certificate;
- statement that the socketing process is performed in accordance with EN 13411-4;
- · rope details from original rope manufacturer's certificate;
- reference to the original rope manufacture's name and certificate no;
- reference to the original socket manufacturer's name and certificate no.

The socket shall be accompanied by a certificate issued by the socket manufacturer, containing the following details:

- socket manufacturer's name and address;
- model or type designation of socket;
- serial no. or other unique identification of the socket;
- minimum breaking load of socket.

## C.16.5.2.3 Marking on socket and socketed medium

The socket shall be marked with the following details:

- socket manufacturer's unique identification;
- model or type designation of socket;

- · serial no. or other unique identification of the socket;
- minimum breaking load of socket.

In addition to the marking required by EN 13411-4, Clause 7, the socketed medium shall be marked with a unique identification for traceability to the certificate issued by the socketing manufacturer. The marking shall be performed in accordance with EN 13411-4, Clause 7.

#### C.16.5.2.4 Information for use and maintenance

The socket and socket resin system shall be accompanied with instructions issued by the socket manufacturer and socket resin system manufacturer, as applicable, covering all necessary instructions as foreseen in EN 13411-4.

#### C.16.5.2.5 Fabrication/manufacturing processes

The socketer's competence shall be documented.

C.16.6 Wedge sockets

#### C.16.6.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

EN 13411-6, Terminations for steel wire ropes – Safety - Part 6: Asymmetric wedge socket EN 13411-7, Terminations for steel wire ropes – Safety - Part 7: Symmetric wedge socket

## C.16.6.2 Manufacturer's certificate

In addition to the information required by EN 13411-6 and -7, the manufacturer's certificate shall contain the following in formation:

- · Minimum breaking load
- · Manufacturing proof test load

## C.16.7 Swivels

## C.16.7.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

- RR-C-271, U.S. Federal Specification
- EN 1677-1, Components for slings Safety Part 1: Forged steel components, Grade 8.

## C.16.7.2 Complementary requirements for swivels

Threaded load bearing parts of the swivel shall be protected against unscrewing.

## C.16.8 Turn buckles

## C.16.8.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

- EN 1677-1:2000+A1:2008 Components for slings Safety Part 1: Forged steel components, Grade
- BF-T- 791.b U.S. Federal Specification

### C.16.8.2 Complementary requirements for turn buckles

## C.16.8.2.1 Design

The turnbuckle shall be equipped with means to lock adjustable rods from unintended disengagement.

#### C.16.8.2.2 Marking

The rods shall be marked with maximum adjustable length to ensure sufficient length of engaged threaded parts

## C.16.9 Pulley blocks and hook blocks, single and multiple sheaves

## C.16.9.1 Normative referrences

The following normative references apply:

## Manually operated pully blocks and deflection pulleys:

EN 13157:2004/AC:2008 Cranes – Safety – hand power lifting equipment

Hook blocks, pully blocks deflection pulleys and sheaves/sheave houses to be used as integral parts of powered lifting appliances:

- EN 13135-2, Cranes Equipment Part 2: Non-electrotechnical equipment
- EN 13001-1, Cranes General design Part 1: General principles and requirements
- EN 13001-2, Cranes General design Part 2: Load effects
- CEN/TS 13001-3-1, Cranes General design Part 3-1: Limit states and proof of competence of steel structures
- CEN/TS 13001-3-2, Cranes General design Part 3-2: Limit states and proof of competence of wire ropes in reeving systems
- FprCEN/TS 13001-3-5, Cranes General design Part 3-5: Limit states and proof of competence of forged hooks

# C.16.9.2 Complementary requirements for pulley blocks and hook blocks, single and multiple sheaves

## C.16.9.2.1 Design

Hook blocks, pulley blocks, deflection pulleys and sheaves/sheave houses to be used as integral parts of powered lifting appliances shall be designed for the dynamic load effects specified by the manufacturer of the powered lifting appliance.

For single sheave blocks, the rated capacity shall be understood as half the maximum head pull. For blocks without becket this equals maximum line pull.

For multi sheave blocks, the rated capacity shall be understood as maximum head pull.

## C.16.9.2.2 Information for use and maintenance

Rated capacity shall be described in detail and include illustrations to explain line pull and head pull.

Maintenance instructions must give clear and unambiguous details on how to measure groove wear on sheaves and bearing wear. Reference marks on sheaves for wear measurement must be illustrated. Required intervals for wear measurements and discard criteria shall be given.

## C.16.9.2.3 Marking

Sheaves shall be permanently marked with reference marks, either stamped or embedded on the sheave circumference, for measuring groove wear (depth).

The rated capacity to be marked on both manually operated pulleys and pulley blocks/hook blocks.

## C.16.10 Ferrule terminations

#### C.16.10.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

• EN 13411 – 3, Termination for steel wire ropes Safety - Part 3: Ferrules and ferrule-securing.

## C.16.10.2 Complementary requirements for ferrule terminations

Ferrule terminations shall be tapered in the wire end.

## C.16.11 Wire rope grips

## C.16.11.1 Normative references

None

## C.16.11.2 Complementary requirements for wire rope grips

## C.16.11.2.1 Design

Wire rope grips shall be of a type with two gripping surfaces. U-bolt clamps shall not be used on lifting equipment.

Wire rope grips should be designed to prevent incorrect assembly.

#### C.16.11.2.2 Instructions for use and maintenance

The user manual shall state the reduction of steel wire rope braking load resulting from the use of wire rope grips.

The user manual shall give assembly instructions with respect to

- correct number of grips and distance between grips,
- · required bolting torque and preparation of bolts (e.g. lubrication requirements),
- type/size of grips v.s. different rope constructions.

## C.17 Special designed lifting accessories in drilling area (Group R10)

## C.17.1 General

Special designed lifting accessories in the drilling area, hereafter referred to as SDLA, comprises, but is not limited to, the following equipment:

- · elevators:
- elevator links ("bails");
- · handling tools;
- · running tools;
- · hanger tools;
- · lifting nipples;
- lifting caps;
- lifting subs.

NOTE As a reminder, reference is made to C.1 regarding application of this NORSOK standard in its entirety.

## C.17.2 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

- ISO 13535, Petroleum and natural gas industries Drilling and production equipment Hoisting equipment
- ISO 10423, Petroleum and natural gas industries Drilling and production equipment Wellhead and christmas tree equipment
- ISO 11961, Petroleum and natural gas industries Steel drill pipe
- ISO 13628-1, Petroleum and natural gas industries Design and operation of subsea production systems – Part 1: General requirements and recommendations
- ISO 13628-4, Petroleum and natural gas industries Design and operation of subsea production systems – Part 4: Subsea wellhead and tree equipment
- ISO 13628-7, Petroleum and natural gas industries Design and operation of subsea production systems – Part 7: Completion/workover riser systems

## C.17.3 Complementary requirements

## C.17.3.1 Design

SDLAs shall comply with the normative references as applicable.

Although not mentioned in the scope of ISO 13535, that standard applies as normative reference to all types of SDLAs, unless stricter requirements are given in the other normative references.

All types of SDLAs shall be designed for one or more specified working load limit(s) (WLL).

NOTE The term "Working Load Limit" in this NORSOK standard is equivalent with the term "Safe working load" in ISO 13535.

If it is possible to use the SDLA for picking up tubulars or other loads from a horizontal position, the workig load limit (WLL) for the SDLA shall be specified for the most unfavourable direction. Alternatively, different WLLs may be specified for horizontal and vertical positions.

For the purpose of calculating the design load according to ISO 13535, the WLL shall be multiplied with a dynamic coefficient of 1,6.

## C.17.3.2 Elevators

#### C.17.3.2.1. General

The working load limit for elevators shall be stated both for lifting the load in vertical and horizontal position.

The working load limit for lifting the load in horizontal position shall be taken as the maximum weight of a single tubular for which the elevator is intended to handle (maximum diameter).

Elevators shall be designed for lifting the load horizontally with the most unfavorable orientation of the elevator, i.e. with the opening sector facing downwards.

All structural members of an elevator, including suspension points, doors, hinges and locking elements, shall be designed to withstand the design load(s) in accordance with ISO 13535.

Means shall be provided to operate the elevator without the need to be in contact with pinch points.

All pinned and bolted connections (e.g. in hinges and suspension points), shall be secured against unintended loosening.

Elevator suspension points shall be designed with means to prevent the elevator links to disconnect from the suspension points. These means shall not be loaded by the elevator links when the load is moved from vertical to horizontal position, unless they are designed for the horizontal WLL in accordance with ISO 13535.

Elevators shall be designed to facilitate verification (e.g. by visual observation) that the size and profile of the load is compatible with the corresponding inside size and shape of the elevator.

Elevators with inserts shall be designed in a way, to easily verify that the correct inserts for the actual pipe dimension are used. Elevators with inserts shall have means to prevent inserts from falling out of the elevator.

## C.17.3.2.2 Locking, securing and indication

The locking mechanisms on elevators shall in addition to the locking element(s) have a securing device and an indication device.

The locking mechanism, including locking element(s), securing device and indication device, shall be protected against external influence (e.g. impacts) that may affect their integrity.

The locking element(s) shall be designed according to a "self closing" principle, i.e. when the load acts in the opening direction(s), the forces transferred to the locking element(s) shall act in the closing direction of the locking element(s).

The securing device shall be a mechanical restraint device that prevents the locking element(s) to be opened unintentionally, e.g. by external impacts. It shall not be possible to unlock the locking element(s) when the securing device is engaged in the "secured" position. It shall not be possible to disengage the securing device when the elevator is loaded.

The indication device shall positively indicate for visual observation on the elevator when the elevator is locked and secured. The indication device shall indicate "locked and secured" by a positive mechanical action between the securing device and the indication device. The indication device shall be mechanically restricted from indicating "locked and secured" when the securing device is not in the "secured" position. The securing device and the indication device may be combined. The indication device shall not depend on any manual intervention by the operator. Whenever the elevator is unlocked or unsecured the indication device shall clearly and unambiguously indicate that the elevator is unlocked and unsecured.

## C.17.3.2.3 Manually operated elevators

For manually operated elevators the locking element(s) shall be engaged by a positive mechanical action between the closing movement of the elevator door(s) and the movement of the locking element(s) to the "locked" position, i.e. engagement of the locking element(s) shall not depend on springs or gravity. It shall not be possible to close the elevator completely if the locking element(s) is(are) in the "locked" position prior to closing. An attempt to close the elevator when the locking element(s) is(are) in the "locked" position shall result in an aperture of at least 20 mm between the adjacent surfaces of the closing parts of the elevator, in order to give a clear visual observation that the elevator is not properly closed.

The securing device on manually operated elevators shall engage automatically to the "secured" position when the locking element(s) is(are) engaged. The securing device shall be prevented by mechanical restriction from engaging in the "secured" position when the locking element(s) is (are) not in the "locked" position.

Release of the load from the elevator shall require at least two separate manual actions by the operator, e.g. one action for disengaging the securing device and one action for opening the locking element(s).

#### C.17.3.2.4 Powered (remote operated) elevators

Powered (remote operated) elevators shall have a pre-defined sequence for all movements, i.e. opening/closing the door(s), engaging/disengaging the locking element(s) and engaging/disengaging the securing device. The sequence shall not be influenced by the operator.

The control system for powered elevators shall be integrated with the control system for the drilling hoisting machine.

Reliable signals shall be provided to the control system for the hoisting machinery when the elevator is in the closed, locked and secured condition. Hoisting movements shall be prevented until the secured indication signal is given. In the case of power loss in locked and secured position the elevator shall remain locked and secured. Means shall be provided to unsecure and unlock the elevator manually when unloaded, only. The safety related parts of the control system shall fulfill EN ISO 13849-1 performance level Praser anidircountrol cable/hoses shall be provided with quick couplings for their connection to the drilling hoisting machine. Means shall be provided to prevent incorrect connection. The connections and their arrangement shall prevent ingress of moisture and contaminations that may influence the power and signal transmission when they are disconnected. For hydraulic elevators, means shall be provided to enable pressure relief prior to maintenance operations.

#### C.17.3.3 Lifting subs, caps, nipples and tools (handling, running and hanger tools used for lifting)

These types of SDLAs shall be secured with double barriers to avoid any part of the tool to disconnect (e.g. unscrew) from the load or the lifting appliance.

NOTE For screwed connections, a verified torque in accordance with the manufacturers instructions, may be regarded as the second barrier.

Means shall be provided for the operator to verify that these types of SDLAs with non-threaded connections are correctly connected to the load and the lifting appliance. For SDLAs where the load holding elements interfacing with the profiles of the load are not visible from the outside of the SDLA, indicating devices visible from the outside shall be provided. Indicating devices shall be visible from all sides of the SDLA. The indicating devices shall give a clear and unambiguous indication that the load holding elements are in correct (locked) position and secured. The indicating devices must be designed to prevent indication of "locked and secured" if the SDLA is not locked and secured.

All SDLAs shall be provided means for connection of standardised lifting accessories for safe handling the SDLA without load.

## C.17.3.4 Testing

For SDLAs with WLL specified for different directions (e.g. vertical and horizontal), the SDLA shall be proof load tested in accordance with ISO 13535 in all specified directions with a test load for the corresponding WLL for each direction.

NOTE The test load will equal 1,5 x design load = 1,5, x 1,6 x WLL = 2,4 x WLL.

## C.17.3.5 Information for use

The working load limit (WLL) of the SDLA must be clearly shown in the user manual. For SDLAs with multiple WLLs, each WLL and its corresponding direction must be explained.

Detailed instruction, including figures/pictures, must be given in the user manual to describe how the SDLA is connected and secured to the lifting appliance and to the load. The interpretation of any indicating devices must be unambiguously described in the user manual.

For SDLAs connected with threads to the load or to the lifting appliance (e.g. Derrick Drilling Machine), the necessary torque to be applied must be specified in the user manual together with any preparation requirements (e.g. lubrication). A clear warning must be provided to inform the user that no lifting is allowed until the specified torque(s) have been applied.

Wear tolerances of load carrying elements for connection to the lifting appliance or to the load must be given in the user manual.

In addition to the user manual, a one-sheet assembly instruction with illustrations and operational limitations shall accompany the SDLA.

### C.17.3.6 Manufacturer's certificate

The manufacturer's statement of compliances required by in ISO 13535, 11.3 a), shall also state compliance with this NORSOK standard.

#### C.17.3.7 Marking

All SDLAs shall be marked with their WLL. For SDLAs with one -1- WLL, the marking shall indicate the WLL for the most unfavourable direction for which the load is possible to be applied. For SDLAs with more than one WLL for different directions, the WLL for each direction shall be marked with a clear indication for which direction the different WLLs apply.

## C.18 Carriers for lifting persons (Group R11)

## C 18.1 Suspended work platform for internal use (work basket)

## C 18.1.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

• EN 14502-1, Cranes – Equipment for lifting persons – Suspended basket Annex F of this standard

## C.18.1.2 Complementary requirements for suspended work baskets

## C.18.1.2.1 Design

The proof of competence for work baskets shall be performed in accordance with Annex F, as described for group F.5, taking into account the following:

- the weight W specified in Annex F is the maximum gross mass (tonnes), corresponding to the sum of tara weight (tonnes) of the basket
- pay load (tonnes) of the basket, taken as at least payload =  $n \cdot (m_p + m_e)$  where
  - is the number of persons allowed on the platform and shall not be less than 2
  - $m_p \ge 0,090$  tonnes is the minimum mass of each person
  - $m_e \ge 0,040$  tonnes is the minimum mass of tools and other equipment for each person
- the risk coefficient given in Table F.4 shall be increased by multiplying with a factor of 1,5.

The dynamic amplification factor (DAF) shall be as specified for inboard/onshore lifting in Annex F.

Work baskets shall have pockets for transport with fork lift trucks.

NOTE Lifting persons with fork lift trucks is not allowed.

Lifting sets shall have a working load limit corresponding to not less than twice the max gross mass of the work basket.

Work baskets shall have two dedicated lifting sets with independent lifting points in the work basket and with independent top links. The lifting sets shall be permanently attached to the work basket with means

Page 104 of 173

tools to remove. The top link to be attached to the crane hook should have minimum internal dimensions mm x 140 mm. For lifting appliances with only one suspension rope, one top link is to be attached directly to the crane hook and the other top link shall be attached above any swivelling elements of the hook.

For aluminium work baskets, the resistances and resistance factors for materials, members and connecting devices shall be taken from EN 1999-1-1.

Work baskets shall have a roof in accordance with EN 14502-1.

The anchorage points for personal protective equipment against fall from a height shall be located above the persons in the baskets.

Work baskets shall have anchorage points for evacuation equipment, e.g. descending devices. The number of anchorage points shall be equal to the number of persons allowed in the work basket.

The work basket shall be designed to withstand impact forces corresponding to a horizontal impact against a rigid structure at a horizontal speed of 1 m/s. Permanent deformations are acceptable, but it shall be demonstrated by calculations that no load bearing members will suffer loss of load bearing capacity.

For the purpose of performing the proof of competence for the work basket floor, the payload of the platform shall be distributed according to EN 280, 5.2.3.1, in the most unfavourable way in terms of stresses.

When the work basket is suspended without persons or other loads, there shall be no inclination.

The work basket shall be designed to limit the inclination to maximum 7° from the horizontal when an inclination test load as described in C.18.1.2.3 is placed in the most unfavourable position on the basket **Tiber** side protection of work baskets shall be designed to withstand internal manual forces according to EN 280, 5.2.3.4.

Any hinged doors shall be equipped with lubrication points on the hinges.

#### **C.18.1.2.2 Materials**

Materials for steel structures shall be selected in accordance with C.6.

Materials for aluminium structures shall be selected in accordance with EN 1999-1-1.

The work basket shall be protected against corrosion if the materials selected are not corrosion resistant.

## C 18.1.2.3 Fabrication

The fabrication requirements in C.6 apply.

Each work basket shall be tested with a static load corresponding to a total weight of 2x max gross mass suspended from the dedicated lifting set. Each lifting set shall be tested separately.

An inclination test shall be performed with an inclination test load equal to the pay load. The centre of gravity of the inclination test load shall be not less than 0,5 m above the floor and not further than 0,3 m from the side protection of the work basket. In this loading condition the static inclination of the work basket shall not exceed 7° from the horizontal.

## C.18.1.2.4 Information for use and maintenance

For baskets intended to be used on offshore installations, a statement shall be given in the instructions to inform that the basket is only intended for lifting internally on the installation. Lifting between installation and supply vessel is prohibited.

The instructions must clearly state that the work basket is only intended to be used with lifting appliances designed and manufactured for the purpose of lifting persons.

The instructions must describe how the top links shall be attached to the crane. A statement shall be given to inform that no other lifting accessories (e.g. forerunners) shall be used between the crane hook and the lifting set of the work basket.

## C 18.2 Stretcher intended for lifting of personnel using lifting appliances

## TO BE DEVELOPED

## C 18.3 Personnel transfer carrier

Reference is made to Annex A

## C.18.4 Man riding harness

## C 18.4.1 Normative references

The following normative references apply:

• EN 813, Personal fall protection equipment - Sit harnesses

## C 18.4.2 Complementary requirements

Man riding harnesses shall be equipped with shoulder straps and attachment point in front. The attachment point shall be located at a height to avoid contact between the face and means of attachment, and to avoid instability of personnel.

# Annex D (Normative) Lifting equipment in drilling area

## D.1 General (Group D)

Lifting equipment in the drilling area shall, in addition to the requirements stated in Clause 1 to Clause 5, also fulfil DNV-OS-E101, Chapter 1 and Chapter 2.

For lifting equipment used in the drilling area where "DnV Lifting appliances, Standard for Certification No.2.22" is referred to in DnV Drilling Plant, an alternative approach is to use EN 13001 series for the structural parts.

For definition of lifting appliances and lifting accessories, reference is made to 3.1.16 and 3.1.17.

For the purpose of this annex

- the term "lifting appliances" also include the load bearing parts of the drilling machine where the drilling machine is connected when lifting the drill string, tubulars or other loads,
- the term "lifting accessories" also includes the load bearing equipment used to connect the drill pipes, tubulars or other loads to the drilling machine or other lifting appliances.

NOTE Typical lifting accessories in drilling operations: Elevators, pipe nipples, pipe caps, running tools, lifting tools, handling tools, etc.

The drill string, casings, risers and downhole equipment, however, are regarded as parts of the load in drilling operations.

## D.2 Group overview

The following tables include an informative list of equipment typically used in drilling operations.

NOTE The list is not necessarily exhaustive.

The lifting equipment in group D.1, D.2, D.3, D.4, D.5 and D.6 are generally lifting appliances.

The lifting equipment in group D.7 is lifting accessories.

Table D.1 - Lifting equipment in the drilling area

		Groups				
Lifting appliances	D.1  Conventional draw work including top drive/derrick drilling machine (DDM)	D.2  Cylinder operated hydraulic draw work (RAM rig) including top drive/derrick drilling machine (DDM)	D.3 Vertical pipe handling (VPH) machine	D.4  Horisontal to vertical (HTV) pipe handling machine including catwalk machine	D.5 X-mas tree /BOP carrier	D.6 Miscellaneous lifting equipment in the drilling area
Lifting accessories	D.7 Drilling lifting accessories.					

Table D.2 – Group D.1 Conventional drawwork including top drive/DDM

Subgroup Drawing Ref.	Equipment description	Main function	Typical names	Lifting equip- ment (Yes/No)	
1	Drawwork	Winch to lift drill string load through several parts of wire rope in crown block and travelling block.	Drawwork	Yes	
2	Fastline wheel	Wiresheave for wire coming from drawwork. Fast rotation.	Fastline wheel	Yes	
3	Crown block	Multisheaved wireblock mounted in upper part of derrick.	Crown block	Yes	
4	Deadline wheel	Wiresheave for wire entering the dead line anchor (small oscillating movements due to wire rope elasticity).	Deadline wheel	Yes	
5	Travelling block	Multisheaved wireblock suspended in the drilling line/wire rope parts.	Travelling block	Yes	
6	Drilling line	Wirerope pulled by draw work.	Drilling line Drill line	Yes	
7	Deadline anchor	Anchorage unit for the dead end of the drilling line. Often combined with a load cell to indicate and record variation of hook load and weight on bit during drilling.	Deadline anchor	Yes	
8	Derrick drilling machine (DDM)	A machine that turns the drill string. It consists of one or more motors (electric or hydraulic) connected with appropriate gearing to the main shaft.  The DDM is suspended from the travelling block, so the rotary mechanism is free to travel up and down the derrick, guided in vertical guide rails.  Drill string load is transmitted through the main shaft, swivel, connection links to the travelling block.	DDM Top drive	Yes	
Other equipme	ent shown in drawii	Drilling tower structure for suspension of crown block/drill string load. Support for derrick mounted equipment.	Derrick Drilling tower	No	
10	Drill line drum	Storage drum for excessive length of wire rope (drilling line) – used during cut and slip operation.	Drill line drum	No	
11	Slips	A wedge formed device used to grip the drill string in a relatively non damaging manner and suspend it in the rotary table.	Slips	No	
12	Rotary Table	The revolving or spinning section of the drill floor that provides power to turn the drill string.  Often a backup system for rotating the drill string when a DDM is installed.	Rotary table	No	
13	Heave compensator	Compensates for vertical rig movements to reduce the drill string movements relative to the sea bed.	Heave compensator	No	
14	Active heave compensator	Used to further reduce drill string movements relative to the sea bed.	Active heave compensator	No	
15	Racker equipment	See Group D.3			
16	Tubular feeding machine (TFM)	See Group D.4			
17	Horizontal to vertical (HTV) arm	See Group D.4			
18	Elevators and elevator suspensions	See Group D.7			
19	Guide track and dolly	Dolly for guiding the DDM	Guide track and dolly	No	

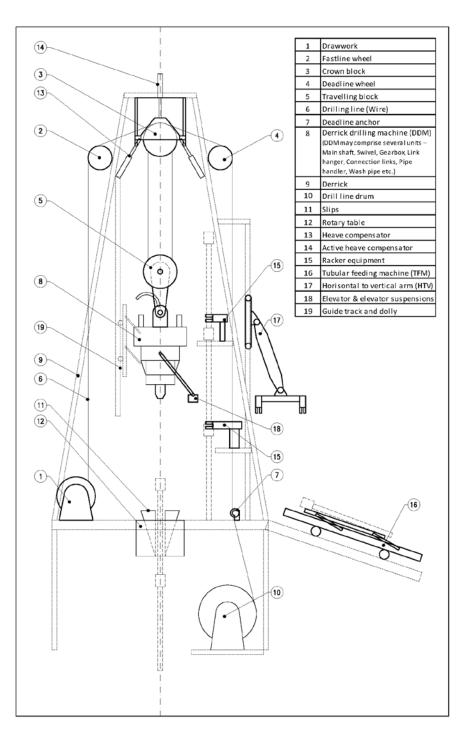


Figure D.1 – Conventional drawwork including top drive/DDM

Table D.3 – Group D.2 Cylinder operated hydraulic drawwork including top drive/DDM

Subgroup Drawing Ref.	Equipment description	Main function	Typical names	Lifting equip- ment (Yes/No)
1	Hydraulic lifting cylinders	Hydraulic cylinders for lifting of travelling yoke, DDM and drill string load.	Ram rig cylinders Lifting cylinders	Yes
2	Accumulators	Accumulators for connection to the lifting cylinders and hoisting system.	Ram rig accumulators	Yes
3	Travelling yoke	Structure connected to the cylinder rods and guided by the derrick structure. The yoke include sheaves for drilling line, mud hoses, hydraulic hoses and electrical cables.	Travelling yoke	Yes
4	Yoke sheaves	Wire sheaves for main hoisting of drill string	Yoke sheaves	Yes
5	Wire rope	Wire rope for DDM suspension via wire sheaves in travelling yoke and fixed ends anchorage in deck structure.	Hoisting wire rope Ram rig wire rope	Yes
6	Wire rope anchor	Anchor points for wire rope. Attached directly to deck structure or via equalizer mechanisms.	Wire rope anchorage	Yes
7	Derrick drilling machine (DDM)	See Group D.1	DDM Top drive	Yes
Other equipme	ent shown in drawi	Drilling tower structure for guiding the travelling yoke.	Derrick	No
		Support for derrick mounted equipment.	Drilling tower Ram rig	
9	Guide track and dolly	Dolly for guiding the DDM	Guide track and dolly	Yes (if used for lifting) No (if guiding only)

NOTE  $\,$  New designs shall be classified according to definition in D.1.

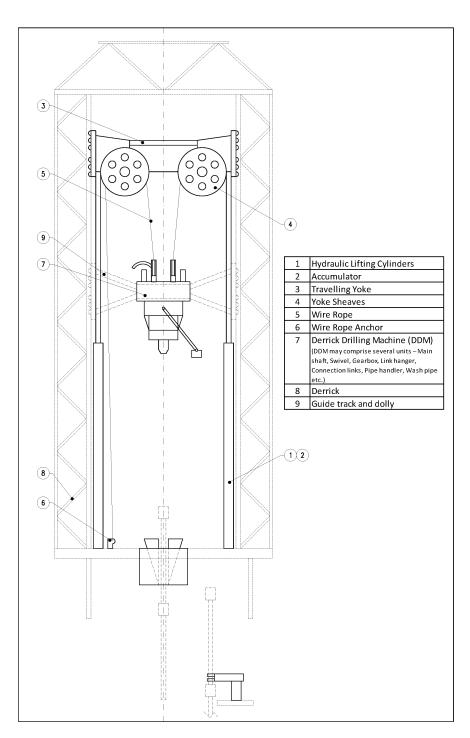


Figure D.2 – Cylinder operated hydraulic drawwork including top drive/DDM

Table D.4 – Group D.3 Vertical pipe handling (VPH) machines

Subgroup	Equipment description	Main function	Typical names	Lifting equip- ment (Yes/No)
1	Racking equipment	Either to grip, lift, guide, transport and position tubulars vertically inside drilling structure (derrick).	Star racker Hydra racker Bridge crane Upper racking arm (URA) Upper guiding arm UGA) Intermediate racking arm (IRA) Lower lifting arm (LLA) Lower guiding arm (LGA)	Yes (if used for lifting) No (if guiding only)
2	Finger boards	Storage rack for tubulars – fixed or adjustable.	Drill pipe finger board Casing finger board Riser finger board Belly board	No
3	Manipulator arms	Normally to guide or assist when tubulars are entering the drill floor area or setback area. Sometimes also used for lifting.	Drill floor manipulator arm (DFMA) Multi manipulator arm (MMA) Tail in arm Power scoop arm Monkey tail	Yes (if used for lifting) No (if guiding only)
4	Mouse hole	An opening in the drill floor near the rotary table, but between the rotary table and the V-door, that enables rapid connections while drilling. May be a hole with a fixed bottom at a certain depth or have a mobile bottom to lift the tubulars stored in the hole.	Mouse hole	Yes (if mobile) No (if fixed)

Table D.5 – Group D.4 Horizontal to vertical (HTV) pipe handling machines

Subgroup	Equipment description	Main function	Typical names	Lifting equip- ment (Yes/No)
1	Pipe rack crane	To lift and transport tubulars from pipe deck area to TFM or directly to drill floor.	Pipe rack crane Pipe deck pipe handler (PDPH) Pipe handling crane Knucle boom crane Triplex crane Dino	Yes
2	Tubular feeding machines (TFM)	To transport tubulars from storage area to drill floor vicinity or setback area. Horizontal transportation or inclined at an angle.	Tubular feeding machine Tubular shuttle Catwalk machine Tubular chute Riser chute	Yes (when vertical motion of load) No (when horizontal motion only)
3	HTV arms	To transport tubulars from a horizontal or inclined position at the TFM to a vertical position at drill floor area or setback area.	Eagle Eagle light	Yes

Table D.6 – Group D.5 X-mas tree/BOP handling systems

Subgroup	Equipment description	Main function	Typical names	Lifting equip- ment (Yes/No)
1	BOP cranes	To lift and transport x-mas tree/BOP stacks.	BOP crane Overhead crane Gantry crane	Yes
2	x-mas tree/BOP Transporter	To safely transport/lift/guide the x-mas tree/BOP from the parked/storage position to the well centre and vice versa.	x-mas tree/BOP transporter x-mas tree/BOP trolley x-mas tree/BOP carrier	Yes (when vertical motion of load) No (when horizontal motion only)

Table D.7 – Group D.6 Miscellaneous lifting equipment in the drilling area

Subgroup	Equipment description	Main function	Typical names	Lifting equip- ment (Yes/No)
1	Man-rider winch	.A winch specially designed for lifting one person.	Man-rider winch	Yes
2	Man riding harness			Yes
3	Access basket	A working basket or personnel basket installed at the end of a fixed or telescopic jib. Slewing and topping movements are normally included to facilitate access to large areas either within the derrick or in the moon pool area.	Access basket Cherry picker Casing stabbing basket	Yes
4	Casing stabbing board	A power driven working platform operating along a guided vertical track.		Yes
5	Utility Winch	Winch used for miscellaneous lifting operations.	Utility winch Tugger winch	Yes
7	Guideline winches	Winch used for installation and tensioning of guide wires.		Yes
8	Wireline equipment	Equipment used for well intervention.	Wireline cranes SIMOPS crane Wireline winch Wireline masts	Yes
9	Tong lift system	Simple lifting device to keep rig tong in correct height position during make-up/break out. Often consisting of a hydraulic cylinder, wire, wiresheave block and block suspension. NOTE The tong itself is considered as a load and not lifting equipment.	Tong lift system Tong lift cylinder	Yes
10	Escape line	Means for evacuation from the derrick		Yes

Table D.8 - Group D.7 Drilling lifting accessories

Subgroup	Equipment description	Main function	Typical names	Lifting equip- ment (Yes/No)
1	One component miscellaneous lifting tools	Tools to connect the tubulars and equipment to the lifting appliance/drilling machine for lifting in and out of the drilling area.	Lifting nipples Lifting caps Lifting adaptors Lifting sub	Yes
2	Miscellaneous lifting tools	Tools to connect the tubulars and equipment to the lifting appliance/drilling machine for lifting in and out of the drilling area.	Riser lifting tools Handling tools Running tols Hanger tools Etc.	Yes
3	Miscellaneous slings	Lifting accessories normally predefined for a special task.	Hang off line Master bushing lifting arrange- ments	Yes (when vertical motion of load)  No (when horizontal motion only)
4	Elevator	A mechanism that may be closed around drillpipes or other drillstring components to facilitate lowering them into the wellbore or lifting them out of the wellbore. In the closed position the elevator forms a load-bearing ring around the component.	Drillpipe elevator Casing elevator Drill collar elevator Tubing elevator etc.	Yes
5	Elevator links	A device that connects the elevator either directly to the travelling block or via the DDM.	Elevator links Bails	Yes

## D.3 Design criteria

#### D.3.1 Design loads

Design loads shall be applied in accordance with DNV-OS-E101, , Ch.2, Sec.1, Subsections H and I.

Depending on the type of lifting appliance DNV-OS-E101, gives further references to other standards, e.g. API spec. 8C, "DNV -Standard for Certification No. 2.22, and "FEM, Rules for the Design of Hoisting Appliances"

It is important to note that API defines "Load Rating" as follows:

"Maximum operating load, both static and dynamic, to be applied to the equipment

NOTE The load rating is numerically equivalent to the design load. "

This is a different approach compared to the definition of "Rated load" used in this NORSOK standard.

## D.3.2 Environmental conditions

To obtain a safe design the buyer of the lifting equipment shall give information regarding the environmental conditions for the installation at the elevation level where the lifting equipment shall be located.

Wind forces, horizontal and vertical accelerations are important basic information for the calculation of realistic forces acting on the equipment both during operational, non-operational and accidental conditions.

## D.3.3 Loading and utilization data

The buyer shall, in agreement with the supplier, decide the required service lifetime, load spectrum and utilization data to be applied for the calculations.

For further information regarding group classification of lifting appliances see "DNV -Standard for Certification No. 2.22, Lifting appliances" and "FEM1.001, Rules for the Design of Hoisting Appliances, Booklet 2".

Some guidance data will be given for the selection of appliance group and dynamic factor for different type of equipment, see D.6 to D.7.

## D.4 Conventional drawwork including top drive/DDM (Group D.1)

All equipment in this group is based on API Specification 8C/ISO 13535. As mentioned above API Spec. 8C defines "Load Rating" as follows:

"Maximum operating load, both static and dynamic, to be applied to the equipment"

NOTE The load rating is numerically equivalent to the design load.

See API Spec 8C/ISO 13535, Chapter 4, for detailed information regarding design criteria.

To ensure that the equipment is safe in use, the requirements stated in Clause 1 to Clause 5 applies.

Note This type of crane is defined as a complex lifting appliance, ref. main part of this NORSOK standard.

## D.5 Cylinder operated hydraulic drawwork including top drive/DDM (Group D.2)

All equipment in this group is based on API Spec 8C/ISO 13535.

As mentioned above API Spec 8C defines "Load Rating" as follows :

"Maximum operating load, both static and dynamic, to be applied to the equipment

NOTE The load rating is numerically equivalent to the design load. "

See API Spec 8C/ISO 13535, Chapter 4, for detailed information regarding design criteria.

To ensure that the equipment is safe in use, the requirements stated in Clause 1 to Clause 5 applies.

## Additional requirements:

For a cylinder operated hydraulic drawwork the components directly controlling the load shall be regarded as main load path components. Typical examples are pressurized valve block units controlling the cylinders.

These components shall be designed as if the components were a part of the hydraulic cylinder regarding material selection, safety factor and pressure test requirements.

These main components of the cylinder operated drawwork shall be thoroughly considered in the safety analysis.

Note This type of crane is defined as a complex lifting appliance.

## D.6 Vertical pipe handling (VPH) machines (Group D.3)

## Dynamic factor

For vertical pipe handling (VPH) machines the dynamic factor shall reflect the actual working condition of the handling machine and shall not be less than 1,3 independent of type of installation – fixed or floating.

The dynamic factor to be used for each individual machine depends on the stiffness of the load handling system. A machine with a flexible jib or a wire suspended load may be calculated using the minimum value of 1.3

A stiffer system e.g. where the tubulars are handled directly by a gripper claw and driven vertically e.g. by a rack and pinion drive and supported to a rigid structure, the dynamic factor shall be increased to minimum 1,6 unless measured or proved otherwise.

When entering pipe joints into the mouse hole, the mobile bottom to receive the vertical pipe is normally not visible. A dynamic factor of 2,0 is thus often applied for the calculations. A reduced dynamic factor may be used if verified by the design, e.g. installed shock absorbers.

#### Appliance group

As a guidance, based on a study of typical VPH operations onboard a drilling rig:

Equipment description	Particulars concerning nature of use	Appliance group
Racking equipment	These machines are in operation when building stands, storing stands in the set back area, tripping out and tripping in stands.	A5 (Q1/U6)

Assumptions: 20 years of operation, drilling 5 wells per year, water depth 1 500 m, total depth 5 400 m.

Further estimated appliance groups:

Equipment description	Particulars concerning nature of use	Appliance group
Manipulator arms	These machines are in operation when tubulars are entering the drill floor area and/or the set back area.	A4 (Q1/U5) or A5 (Q1/U6)
Mouse hole	These machines are in operation when building stands, i.e. a reduced number of operating cycles.	A2 (Q1/U3)

NOTE A new standard for "Bridge and Gantry Cranes" – prEN 15011 is referred to in Annex G4.

The typical name "Bridge crane" as listed in Table D.4, Subgroup 1, should not be regarded as a "Bridge and Gantry Crane" according to prEN 15011. This "Bridge crane" is a part of the racking system and should be designed as specified in D.1.

## D.7 Horizontal to vertical (HTV) pipe handling machines (Group D.4)

## Dynamic factor

For HTV machines the dynamic factor shall reflect the actual working condition of the handling machine and shall not be less than 1,3 independent of type of installation – fixed or floating.

The dynamic factor to be used for each individual machine depends on the stiffness of the load handling system. A machine with a flexible jib or a wire suspended load may be calculated using the minimum value of 1,3.

When pipes are laid down onto the tubular feeding machine a dynamic factor of minimum 1,8 shall be used. This applies for the TFM when at standstill in a loading operation.

#### Appliance group

By way of guidance based on a study of typical HTV operations onboard a drilling rig:

Equipment description	Particulars concerning nature of use	Appliance group
Horizontal to vertical (HTV) pipe handling machines.	These machines are in operation to transport pipes from the main crane landing area to pipe deck and further from pipe deck to drill floor.	A4 (Q1/U5)

Assumptions: 20 years of operation, drilling 5 wells per year, water depth 1 500 m, total depth 5 400 m.

Additional requirements for lifting accessories, see Annex C.

## D.8 X-mas tree/BOP handling systems (Group D.5)

## General

Gantry type cranes in this group shall be designed according to G.4.

## Appliance group

Estimated appliance groups:

Equipment description		Particulars concerning nature of use	Appliance group
X-mas tree/BOP ha BOP cra x-mas tree/BOP	nes	These machines are in operation when handling the BOP, i.e. very seldom. The load is, however, often high relative to SWL.	A2 – A3

#### Additional requirements

Lifting equipment used for lifting BOPs or x-mas trees shall have a rated capacity indicator in accordance with EN 12077-2. If the load is lifted by more than one independent lifting appliance the rated capacity indicator shall give information for each individual lifting appliance.

NOTE This type of crane is defined as a complex lifting appliance.

## D.9 Miscellaneous lifting equipment in the drilling area (Group D.6)

## D.9.1 Man rider winch

See Annex G.7.3

## D.9.2 Man riding harness

See Annex C, 11.4 Group R11

#### D.9.3 Access basket

See Drilling plant Ch 2. sec.5 I "Man riding equipment" and relevant requirements in EN 280

## D.9.4 Casing stabbing board:

See Drilling plant Ch 2. sec.5 I "Man riding equipment" and relevant requirements in EN 280

## D.9.5 Utility winch

See Annex G.7

## **D.9.6 Guideline winches**

See Annex G.7.1

#### **D.9.7 Wireline equipment**

See Annex G (G7 or G20)

## D.9.8 Tong lift system

See Lifting appliances 2.22

## D.9.9 Escape line

See Annex A Groupe E5

## D.10 Drilling lifting accessories (Group D.7)

## D.10.1 One component miscellaneous lifting tools

See Annex C, Group R10

## **D.10.2 Miscellaneous lifting tools**

See Annex C, Group R10

## **D.10.3 Miscellaneous slings**

See Annex H, Foundation and suspensions, Annex C

## D.10.4 Elevator

See Annex C, Group R10

## D.10.5 Elevator links

See Annex C, Group R10

# Annex E (Normative) Elevators and lifts

## E.1 General (Group E)

This annex applies to lifts on offshore petroleum installations and lifts in the process areas at petroleum installations on shore.

The requirements of this annex apply in addition to the relevant requirements stated in Clause 1 to Clause 5 and Annex B.

## E.2 Group overview

Group no.	Group	Sub. groups	Relevant standard
E1	Electric lifts	Lifts for transportation of persons and goods	EN 81-1
E2	Hydraulic lifts	Lifts for transportation of persons and goods	EN 81-2
E3	Service lifts	Goods lift up to 300 kg	EN 81-3
E4	Rack and pinion lifts	Lifts for transportation of persons and goods	Safety measures shall be in accordance with EN 81-1
E5	Goods lift	Goods lift above 300 kg	Clause 1 to Clause 5 Relevant require-ments of EN 81-3

## E.3 Additional requirements for all lifts group E1, E2, E4

## E.3.1 General

Lifts shall be designed to operate in a minimum operational temperature of -20 °C unless otherwise specified in standards referred to in this annex.

Lifts shall have a totally enclosed lift well.

Fire protection shall be in compliance with the general area classification

For floating installations, lifts and associated guides and components, shall be constructed to allow for the relevant movements. As an addendum to EN standards, ISO 8383 should be used for relevant parts.

Lifts shall not be considered as a part of escape routes. However, it shall be possible to escape from the lift and the hoist way with the lift at any elevation. This may require a hatch in the lift car roof and permanent ladder in the well. The lift car shall automatically be prevented from moving, when personnel is escaping from the well. The lift should to be manually reset from outside the well. The escape system shall be risk evaluated. Alternatively the escape system can be arranged outside the projection of the lift car roof.

Escape from legs/shafts/columns of an installation shall be considered separately. If use of lift is necessary to ensure adequate and effective escape, the lift system shall satisfy special requirements, e.g. concerning transport of injured personnel on stretchers, protection, ventilation, power supply. Relevant requirements in NS-EN 81-72 should be considered.

Passenger and goods lift(s) shall be provided if living quarters has more than two floor levels. The lift(s) shall provide access to all main levels, and at least one lift shall be dimensioned to accommodate a standard stretcher (2 200 mm x 650 mm), with an inside cabin floor dimension of minimum 2 400 mm x 1 200 mm. Any continuation of internal lift(s) from the the living quarters to any levels outside the living quarters, should be considered divided by appropriate smoke and sound barrier(s).

Every landing entrance shall incorporate a sill of sufficient strength to withstand the passage of loads being introduced into the car. A slight counter slope shall be provided in front of each landing sill to avoid water

Page 119 of 173

washing, sprinkling, etc., draining into the well. Landings entrances, exposed to weather, shall have a drain prevent water from coming in to the well.

It shall be possible to transport goods consistent with the capacity of the lift, by means of pallet jack, in and out of the lift, without obstruction from door thresholds or without damaging the threshold.

The distance between lift car sill and well wall, may in special circumstances be increased to 0,25 m.

If it is not acceptable to mount a socket outlet in the pit, one socket shall be placed near by, outside the pit. Alarm in pit can be omitted if work procedures establish that radio communication always shall be present when working in the pit.

If a drain point is located at the bottom of the lift pit, it shall be gas tight and have a fail-safe mechanism against drying out.

The light in the well shall be permanently on.

Switch for illumination of the car can be omitted if there is a information sign in the main switchboard, and the contactors for the light circuit is protected against unintended deactivation.

Wire terminations by use of U-bolt clamps on tensioned part of wire ropes is prohibited.

The design of rigid screens, protecting rotating/ moving equipment, shall enable easy inspection and maintenance of the protected equipment.

Audible and visual alarm in the central control room shall be automatically activated if the lift goes out of service (unintended stop between landing doors).

The lift(s) shall be equipped with a telephone connected to the main telephone system (private automatic branch exchange) at the installation.

PA system shall be installed in the lift car.

Upon low alarm for HC gas detection (20 % LEL) in the area, surrounding the lift well, lifts shall automatically go to next floor level and stop. Continued use of the lift shall be prohibited. Upon high alarm for HC gas detection (30 % LEL) in the area surrounding the lift well, the lift shall stop.

## E.3.2 Materials and fabrication

Materials and fabrication may be in accordance with relevant NORSOK standards.

#### E.3.3 Documentation

The elevator shall be certified by an approved enterprise of competence.

# Annex F (Normative) Portable units

## F.1 General (Group F)

For portable units the requirements of this Annex apply in addition to the requirements stated in Clause 1 to Clause 5.

It is assumed that good slinging practices is followed. The slinging, lifting and lowering operations should be planned before commencing the lift in accordance with to NORSOK R-003 or NORSOK R-005.

The portable units shall be designed to facility safe lifting. The following should be duly considered:

- all groups of portable units shall be free from protruding parts outside the envelope of the unit, i.e. details
  and parts that may catch or damage other load, load carriers or structures are not allowed. Especially
  protruding parts representing a risk for overload to crane in case of entanglement to the vessels during
  lifting operation are not allowed;
- portable units with door handles, hinges, hatch cleats and similar details shall be arranged in a recessed or protected fashion to avoid becoming catch points or contacting points that may complicate lifting and handling operations. Deflector plates should be designed such that the angle between the outer plane (e.g. of bottom rail or wall) and the free edge of the plate is not more than 35°;
- portable units shall be designed to prevent the lifting set from being entangled to the underside or outer corners of the unit:
- avoid elements on top of the portable unit that create a risk of entangling. The top of all open portable
  units with permanent internal fittings, machinery or other installations where crane hooks or
  forerunners/pendants or lifting set may snag, shall be protected with grating, plates or canvas cover. This
  may be fixed, hinged or removable. Top protection shall be capable of being secured;
- stacking points on top of portable units shall not be located at corners outside the shackle attachment
  point to avoid entanglement with cargo rails, openings, surrounding structures, other portable units etc.,
  see Figure F.1 and Figure F.2;
- pad eyes for connection to lifting set should be oriented to ensure that the resulting sling force on each pad eye acts in the plane of the pad eye (+/- 2°);
- the lever arm effect in bolted connections, causing tension load in bolts and bending stresses in flanges.

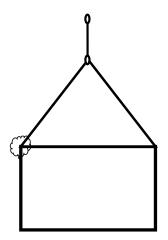


Figure F.1 - Envelope of unit represented by frame and sling arrangement



Figure F.2 - Stacking pins or other protruding parts shall not represent a risk for entanglement to vessel, structure or other load

## F.2 Group overview

Group no.	Group	Description
F1	Offshore containers	Portable unit with a maximum gross mass not exceeding 25 000 kg, for repeated use in the transport of goods or equipment, handled in open seas, to, from or between fixed and/or floating installations and ships.
F2	Offshore service containers	Portable unit built and equipped for a special service task, mainly for temporary installation, e.g. are laboratories, workshops, stores, power plants, control stations.)
F3	Portable offshore units	Portable unit or package with a maximum gross weight not exceeding 100 tonnes, for repeated or single use with a primary service function, handled in open seas, to, from or between fixed and/or floating offshore installations and ships.
F4	Heavy lift units and units for subsea lifting	Heavy lift units are portable units with a maximum gross weight equal to or exceeding 50 tonnes planned to be lifted by a heavy lift vessel.  Units for subsea lifting are portable units intended for lifting through wave zone and lowering in deep water to landing on seabed.
F5	Lifted objects	This group includes any loads not belonging to the other groups, which are not in themselves lifting equipment, but fitted with attachment points for lifting accessories for lifting onshore, internally on an offshore installation or between installation and vessel. Lifted objects also includes objects with detachable transport skid/cradle.  Examples of lifted objects may be
		<ul> <li>machines, components or equipment with fixed or detachable dedicated lifting points,</li> <li>modules or structures with lifting point for intended for lifting during installation, maintenance and decommissioning.</li> </ul> Typical unit weights from 2 tonnes to 50 tonnes but may be
		used for lifts up to 100 tonnes.

## F.3 Offshore containers (Group F1)

Offshore containers shall be in accordance with DNV standard for certification No. 2.7-1 April 2006, Section 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 or EN 12079 - 1 and EN 12079 - 2.

In order to avoid mix of shackles of different specifications, only grade 8 shackles shall be selected.

Offshore containers intended for transport of dangerous goods shall also be certified in accordance with the IMDG code.

## F.4 Offshore service containers (Group F2)

Offshore service containers shall be in accordance with DNV standard for certification No. 2.7-2 December 1995, Section 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 and 10.

The offshore service container shall also comply with applicable requirements of NORSOK Z-015.

## F.5 Portable offshore units (Group F3)

Portable offshore units shall be in accordance with DNV standard for certification No. 2.7-3 May 2011, Section 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8. Only operational class R60 is acceptable for use on the Norwegian continental shelf.

For the purpose of this NORSOK standard, only portable offshore units of type A according to DNV Standard for Certification No. 2.7-3 is included in group F.3. Types B, C, D and E are to be considered as

## Group F5. Heavy lift units and units for subsea lifting (Group F4)

Heavy lift units and units for subsea lifting shall be designed in accordance with DNV Rules for the planning and execution of marine operations, January 1996 as amended, Part 1 Chapter 3 and 4, Part 2 Chapter 5.

Units for subsea lifting shall be analysed in accordance with DNV-RP-H103, which gives guidance for modelling and analysis of marine operations including lifting through wave zone and lowering of objects in deep water to landing on seabed.

## F.7 Lifted objects (Group F5)

#### F.7.1 General

This group of lifts often have typical characteristics, e.g.:

- objects that can not be lifted with the aid of a load carrier;
- lifting lugs are designed, located and installed based on a well defined weight;
- often unsymmetrical lifting sets due to defined location of the centre of gravity (COG):
- if a transport cradle is required, the cradle is often designed with defined supports for the machine or equipment to be transported and sometimes bolted or locked to the equipment;
- in some special cases the lifting lugs may partly be located on the lifting cradle and partly on the equipment to be transported.

#### F.7.2 Design

## F.7.2.1 General design requirements

Objects to be lifted between installation and vessel should be designed with fixed lifting points.

If two 2-legged slings are selected to function as a four legged sling, the lift shall be calculated as for a four legged sling.

The top link shall be possible to reach by the deck operator at maximum 1 m height above deck without climbing on the load. All loads with weight above 25 tonnes should have two separate top links. For loads with weight of more than 25 tonnes the top links shall be laid down along the deck at least 1,5 m from the

The lifting arrangement shall be designed in accordance with the following design principles:

- use 2 or 3 lifting points if possible. More than 4 should be avoided;
- working angle (from vertical) should be between 15 degrees and 45 degrees. If the sling angle from vertical is less that 15 degrees, all loads shall be calculated as taken by one sling;
- hook to be positioned vertically above COG to give a steady lift;
- equal length slings to be used as far as possible;
- large differences in sling lengths shall be avoided;
- · wire rope for lifting slings shall have a minimum diameter of 13 mm;
- lifting chains shall have a minimum diameter of 8 mm.

NOTE Normal fabrication tolerances in sling lengths and shift in COG may lead to all load transferred in one sling leg if sling angle from vertical is less than 15 degrees.

Slings should be protected from edges, friction and abrasion, whether from the load or the lifting appliance.

As a general rule the lifting lugs/attachment points should be located higher than the COG of the load to be sure the lift do not tip over.

If the requirement in F.1 could not be fully met, risk reducing measures to protect the lifting set from damage should be described in instructions for lifting. Instructions should be provided to ensure that portable units with protruding parts are placed with some open space > 1,5 m around the load on the supply vessel to minimize risk for entanglement to other load or openings in cargo rail.

#### F.7.2.2 Lifting set terminology

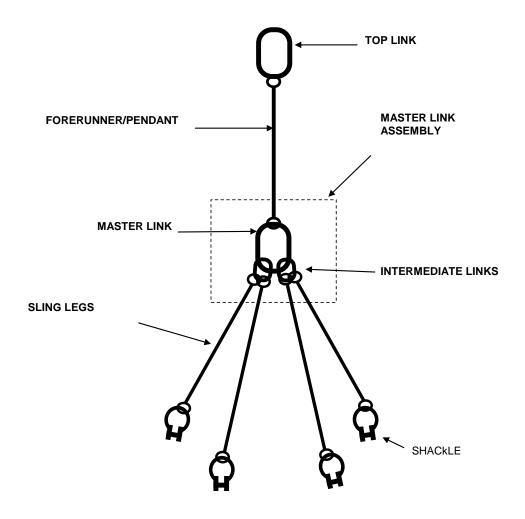


Figure F.3 - Terminology

## F.7.2.3 Lifting design load factors

## F.7.2.3.1 Summary of design load factors and resistance factors

The factors relevant for lifting design are summarized in Table F.1.

Table F.1 - Factors relevant for lifting design

<u>=</u>		
	Load factors	Resistance

							fac	tor
APPLICATION	TO FIND	W <sub>COG</sub>	SKL	DAF	$DF = (\gamma)$ $\gamma_p$	γ <sub>n</sub> )	$\frac{1}{\gamma_e}$	γRm
		Lifting a	ccessori	es				
Sling design	MBL	Х	Χ	Χ	Х	Χ	Χ	Χ
Shackle selection	MBL	Х	Χ	Х	Х	Χ		Х
Master link/ Forerunner	MBL			Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
Check of structural capacity during lifting								
Check of structure capacity	Design load	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х		Х
Padeye design	Design load	Х	Χ	Х	Х	Χ		Χ

## F.7.2.3.2 Working load limit (WLL)

The working load limit (WLL) is defined as follows:

$$WLL = W * W_{CF}$$
 (F.1)

where

WLL = weight of the lifted object W including weight contingency and excluding the lifting sling set

W = estimated weight of the lifted object

W<sub>CF</sub> = weight contingency factor as defined in the table below

The weight of the lifted object shall be multiplied with a contingency factor according to Table F.2 based on the method used defining the weight.

Table F.2 - Determination of weight contingency factor

METHOD TO DETERMINE THE WEIGHT	W <sub>CF</sub>	COMMENT
Weighing	1,03	Incl. weighing by platform crane with calibrated loadcell within ±3 % accuracy.
Detailed calculation, based on up-to- date drawings	1,1	NOTE Possibility of significant weight development during construction and fabrication.
Detailed calculation, based on less updated drawings/info	≥1,2	W <sub>CF</sub> to be assessed specifically. A factor of 1,5 or more should be considered for demolition lift.

## F.7.2.3.3 Centre of gravity (COG) envelope factor W<sub>COG</sub>

For weighed objects or objects with a simple weight pattern:  $W_{COG} = 1,0$ 

For unweighed objects or objects with a complex weight pattern:  $W_{COG} = 1,1$ 

Examples of structures with simple weight pattern are single elements, pipes or equipment, simple trusses or deck sections, or packages where weight and centre of gravity (COG) can be accurately calculated.

## F.7.2.3.4 Skew load factor (SKL)

Skew loads are additional loads from redistribution due to equipment and fabrication tolerances and other uncertainties with respect to force distribution in the rigging arrangement.

The following SKL values should be used when the rigging fulfils the following criterias:

Page 126 of 173

- · sling lengths within fabrication tolerances;
- approximately symmetrical sling configuration with a working angle not more than 45 degrees from the vertical.

Tabell F.3 - Skew load factor - usual rigging design and slings within tolerances

LIFTING CONFIGURATION	SKL
Single hook 4 point lift without spreader bar (statically indeterminate)	1,25
Single hook 4 point lift with 1 or 2 floating spreader bars	1,10
Tandem lift and 4 point lifts (statically determinate)	1,00
3 point lift or less (statically determinate)	1,00

If the rigging has a less optimal design or geometry, an increased SKL shall be considered. Reference is made to DNV's "Rules for planning and execution of marine operations", Pt.2 Ch.5 Section 2.3.

NOTE With a rigid load the majority of the weight may be taken by only three, or even two, of the legs, with the remaining legs only serving to balance the load.

## F.7.2.3.5 Dynamic amplifying factor (DAF)

Standard dynamic amplifying factor to be used for lifting operation in general shall be:

Onshore lifts/platform (inboard lifts) on fixed or floating installations: DAF = 1,5

The following dynamic factor shall be used for the design of lifting arrangement on objects for offshore lifting by offshore pedestal crane.

Offshore lifts: 
$$DAF = 1{,}09 + 0{,}41 \cdot \sqrt{\frac{50}{WLL}} \quad \text{for WLL} \le 50 \text{ tonnes} \tag{F.2}$$

NOTE This DAF is based on lifting with offshore crane with  $Hs \le 6$  m.

For lifts from 50 tonnes to 100 tonnes the dynamic facor DAF shall be selected with a linear reduction from 1,5 at 50 tonnes to 1,3 at 100 tonnes for all lifts if designed according to this NORSOK standard.

Figure F.4 shows typical DAF values for lifting between installations (fixed or floating) and supply vessel, involving a typical offshore crane.

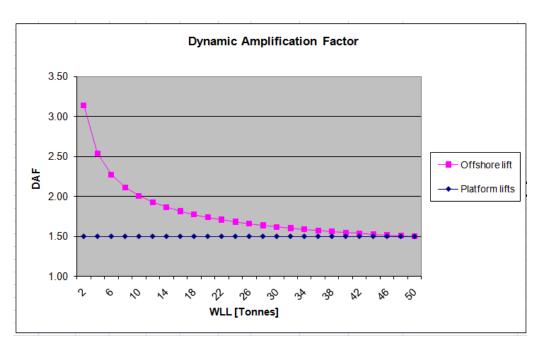


Figure F.4 – Dynamic amplification factor (DAF)

## F.7.2.3.6 End termination factor $\gamma_e$

End termination factor:

## Wire rope slings:

Ferrule secure termination EN 13411-3	$\gamma_{\rm e}=0.9$
Spliced terminations EN 13411-2	$\gamma_e = 0.8$
Chain slings EN 818-2	$\gamma_{\rm e} = 1.0$
Fibre slings spliced termination EN 1492-4	$\gamma_{\rm e} = 0.9$
Fibre, endless Soft slings and webbing slings EN 1492-1	
and EN 1492-2	$\gamma_{\rm e} = 1.0$

## F.7.2.3.7 Material resistance facor, $\gamma_{\text{Rm}}$

Material resistance factor for:

## Check against minimum breaking load (MBL):

Wire rope slings:	$\gamma_{Rm} = 2.0$
Chain slings:	$\gamma_{Rm} = 1.8$
Shackle and rings (incl master links)	$\gamma_{Rm} = 1.8$
Fibre slings	$v_{Pm} = 2.8$

## Check against yield strength for structural steel, see NORSOK N-004:

Lifting lugs and structural parts	$\gamma_{Rm} = 1,15$
Bolts and welds	$\gamma_{Rm} = 1,3$

For structures, bolted connections, welded connections and lifting lug design the material resistance factor may be selected according to above factors or other recognised standards like EN 13001-3-1 and EN 1993-1-1 Eurocode 3 may be used.

Capacity of structural parts, bolts and welds are checked against yield limits for steel in accordance with recommended standards. Lifting components like slings, shackles and rings are checked against minimum breaking load. Thus, the safety levels for all load bearings components are considered to be approximately equal.

## F.7.2.3.8 Design factor (DF)

The design factor DF is defined as:

 $DF = \gamma_p \cdot \gamma_c$  (F.3)

where

 $\gamma_p$  = partial load factor

 $\gamma_{c}$  = consequence factor

Tabell F.4 - Design factors (DF)

ELEMENT CATEGORY	$\gamma_{p}$	γс	DF (γ <sub>ρ</sub> ·γ <sub>c</sub> )
Lifting points including attachments to object	1,34	1,25	1.68
Single critical elements supporting the lifting point	1,54	1,20	1,00
Lifting equipment (spreader bar, shackles, slings etc)	1,34	1,25	1,68
Main elements which are supporting the lift point	1,34	1,10	1,48
Other structural elements of the lifted object	1,34	1,0	1,34

## F.7.2.4 Lifting arrangement

## F.7.2.4.1 Lifting arrangement drawing

A lifting arrangement in this context consists of the lifted load and its dedicated lifting set. A lifting arrangement drawing shall be prepared. The following information (not limited to) shall be stated on the lifting arrangement drawing:

- · net/gross weight of lifted object;
- GA-drawing of the lifting arrangement, showing the geometry of the load, including location of centre of gravity, and the sling assembly;
- WLL for the complete lifting set. Note that this particular WLL shall not include DAF. Thus it will express
  the maximum allowed weight of lifted object;
- WLL and MBL for each individual component of the lifting arrangement;
- working angles (angle between vertical and sling leg);
- sling and shackle type specification;
- material specification;
- certificate requirements;
- operational limitations;
- · sling lengths and fabrication tolerances;
- reference to applicable standards.

#### F.7.2.4.2 Structural design

Design load in accordance with F.7.2.3 should be chosen for proof of competence of structural components. Standard lifting lugs as specified in Annex J should preferably be selected.

## F.7.2.4.3 Steel wire rope slings specification

Wire rope slings for offshore lifting shall be selected by specifying the following:

- wire rope type/construction;
- standard (NS-EN 12385-4 subsidiary NS-EN 13414-1);
- · working load limit (WLL);

- minimum breaking load (MBL) (excluding end termination factor γ<sub>e</sub>);
- sling length (far inside eyes) in mm;
- · end termination design.

#### Recommended construction/types:

- Steel Wire 6X36-CFS 1770 or 1960 N/mm² (6-strand rope with Fibre Core)
- Steel Wire 6x36/41/49 CWR (IWRC) 1770 or 1960 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (6-strand rope with Steel Core)

#### F.7.2.4.4 Shackles and rings

The following apply:

- shackles design standard shall be U.S. Fed. Spec RR-C-271 (Type IV Grade B), or EN 13889 grade 8;
- anchor type (Bow shackle, H-) shackle should be used;
- safety shackle (bolt and nut with split pin) shall be used;
- ring design standard shall be EN 1677-4;
- charpy test by minimum. 42J at -20 °C;
- certificate: ILO form no 4.

#### F.7.2.4.5 Chains

The following apply:

- chain slings should be Welded Grade 8 short link chain according to EN 818-2. Other grades of similar or better quality may be used if they satisfy requirements of a recognized standard applicable for <u>lifting</u> equipment and with Charpy values as specified herein;
- ILO form 4 certificate:
- Charpy values/temperature: 42 J/-20 °C (27 J/-20 °C in fusion line).

## F.7.3 Examples of calculations

4 part sling arrangement

## F.7.3.1 Lifting point load

Heaviest loaded lifting point will normally be the point closest to COG. This point will have a maximum vertical reaction for design,  $P_{LP}$ , as illustrated by Figure F.4.

3 part sling arrangement

Figure F.4 - Heaviest loaded lifting point B, with vertical reaction  $\mbox{P}_{\mbox{\scriptsize LP}}$ 

## 4-point lift

For a 4 point simply symmetrical lift with  $b_1 > b_2$  and  $a_1 > a_2$  as illustrated in Figure F.4, the vertical reaction  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathsf{LP}}$  may be expressed by the equilibrium equation as follows:

For a 4 point non-symmetrical lift a more detailed analysis is recommended.

 $P_{LP} \approx \frac{WLL \cdot b_1 \cdot a_1 \cdot W_{COG} \cdot SKL \cdot DAF}{L_{A-B} \cdot L_{B-C}}$  (F.4)

## 3-point lift

For a 3 point non-symmetrical lift, with  $b_1 > b_2$  and  $a_1 > a_2$  as illustrated in Figure F.5, the vertical reaction  $\textbf{P}_{LP}$  in heaviest loaded point B may be found by equilibrium as follows:

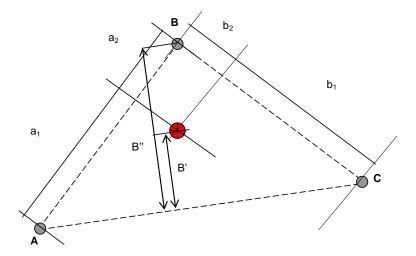


Figure F.5 - 3-point lift - Vertical design reaction PLP

## 2-point lift

For a 2 point non-symmetrical lift, with  $L_1 < L_2$  as illustrated in Figure F.6, the vertical reaction  ${\bf P_{LP}}$  in heaviest loaded point B may be found by equilibrium as follows:

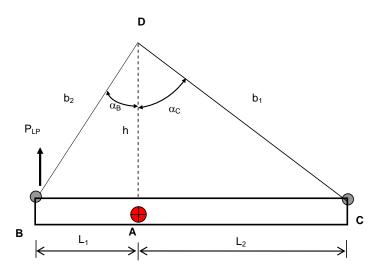


Figure F.6 - 2-point lift - Vertical design reaction P<sub>LP</sub>

$$P_{LP} \approx \frac{WLL \cdot W_{COG} \cdot SKL \cdot DAF \cdot L_2}{(L_1 + L_2)}$$
(F.6)

## 1-point lift

For a 1 point non-symmetrical lift, the vertical reaction  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathsf{LP}}$  may be found as follows:



Figure F.7 - 1-point lift - Vertical design reaction  $P_{\text{LP}}$ 

## F.7.3.2 Required shackle size

Determination of required shackle:

$$\frac{P_{LP} \cdot \gamma_{Rm} \cdot DF}{\cos \alpha_{B}}$$
 (F.8)

where  $\gamma_{Rm} = 1.8$  for shackles.

Note The rated WLL for the shackle will then be:

 $WLL_{Shackle} \ge MBL_{shackle}/SF_m$ 

where  $\ensuremath{\mathsf{SF}_m}$  is the safety factor as specified by the shackle manufacturer.

#### F.7.3.3 Required slings

The sling leg(s) shall be selected on the basis of minimum breaking load MBL in (F.9):

$$MBL_{SLING} = \frac{P_{LP} \cdot \gamma_{Rm} \cdot DF}{\cos \alpha_{B} \cdot \gamma_{e}}$$
 (F.9)

where  $\gamma_{\text{Rm}}$  and  $\gamma_{\text{e}}$  is given in F.7.2.3.7 and F.7.2.3.6, respectively.

Note When ordering slings it should be noted to the manufacturer that end termination factor is included in the calculations.

#### F.7.3.4 Master link and top link

Required master link and top link to be selected from supplier catalogue on the basis of minimum breaking

$$MBL_{ML} \ge WLL * DAF *DF * \gamma_{Rm}$$
. (F.10)

## F.7.4 Marking of lifting sling sets

The lifting sling set shall be marked in accordance with of EN 13414-1,7.1, and a reference to a rigging design drawing with specified sling angles for the lift.

Lifting sets designed for offshore lifts shall have the following additional marking:

- "Offshore lift"
- "NORSOK R-002-F5"

The marking tag and its means of attachment to the sling assembly required shall be made of corrosion resistant material. The total weight of the tag and its means of attachment to the sling assembly should have a mass of less than 70 g.

## F.7.5 Lifting lug design load

Determination of lifting lug design load:

$$P_{P} = \frac{P_{LP} \cdot \gamma_{Rm} \cdot DF}{\cos \alpha_{B}}$$
 (F.11)

Reference is given to Annex J for proof of competence for lifting lugs.

## F.7.6 Alternative selection of lifting sets

As an alternative to detailed calculation and certification of lifting sets according to the requirements stated in this standard, wire rope slings according to EN 13414-1 or chain slings according to EN 818-4, grade 8, or other recognised standards can be used for offshore lifting of group F5 items by applying a dynamic reduction factor  $R_{\text{DAF}}$  to the lifted weight:

$$R_{DAF} = 0.73 + 0.27 \cdot \sqrt{\frac{50}{Lifted \ weight}}$$
 (F.12)

Table F.5 can be used for determination of the minimum working load limit WLLmin of the lifting set for the lifted object.

Tabell F.5 - Enhancement factor

Lifted weight (tonnes)	Dynamic reduction factor R <sub>DAF</sub>	Min required working load limit (WLLmin)
0,5	-	4,0
1,0	-	4,0
1,5	-	4,0
2	2,08	4,16
4	1,68	6,74
6	1,51	9,06
8	1,41	11,24
10	1,33	13,34
12	1,28	15,37
14	1,24	17,36
16	1,21	19,32
18	1,18	21,24
20	1,16	23,14
22	1,14	25,01
24	1,12	26,87
26	1,10	28,71
28	1,09	30,54
30	1,08	32,36
32	1,07	34,16
34	1,06	35,95
36	1,05	37,74
38	1,04	39,51
40	1,03	41,27
42	1,02	43,03
44	1,02	44,78

Lifted weight (tonnes)	Dynamic reduction factor R <sub>DAF</sub>	Min required working load limit (WLLmin)
46	1,01	46,53
48	1,01	48,27
50	1,00	50,00

## F.7.7 Materials and fabrication

Materials selection and fabrication shall be performed in accordance with 5.22.

## F.7.8 Testing and documentation

## F.7.8.1 Lifting set

Lifting sets shall be tested and accompanied by documentation in accordance with C.1 as required for groups R1, R2 or R3 as applicable.

## F.7.8.2 Lifted object

Lifted objects need not be tested.

Lifted objects shall be accompanied by a statement for lifting, issued by the manufacturer of the lifted object. The statement for lifting shall contain at least the following information:

- manufacturers name and address;
- · identification of the lifted object;
- "Offshore Lift";
- "NORSOK R-002-F5";
- maximum gross mass of the lifted object, in kg;
- reference to a rigging design drawing with specified sling angles for the lift;
- a statement declaring that the lifted object is designed, manufactured and inspected for offshore lifting;
- name and position of person authorised to sign the statement;
- · date and signature.

## Annex G (Normative) Cranes

## G.1 General (Group G)

The requirements of this Annex apply in addition to the requirements stated in Clause 1 to Clause 5.

## G.2 Group overview

Group no.	Group	
G1	Mobile cranes	
G2	Tower cranes	
G3	Slewing jib cranes	
G4	Bridge and gantry cranes	
G5	Offshore cranes	
G6	Floating cranes	
G7	Winches and hoists	
	<ul> <li>Power driven winches</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Power driven hoists</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Manrider winches</li> </ul>	
G8	Loader cranes	
G9	Cable cranes	
G10	Hand powered hoists and trolleys	
G20	Other cranes	

## G.3 Design criteria

## G.3.1 Design loads

Design loads for cranes shall be applied in accordance with 5.7 and standards referred to within this annex, whichever gives the most stringent requirement.

The design load shall be established reflecting the maximum operating load, both static and dynamic, to be applied for design calculations.

For load combinations reference is also given to DNV Standard for certification of lifting appliances Ch.2 Sec. 3.

## **G.3.2** Operating temperature limits

Cranes shall be designed to operate in a minimum operational temperature of -20 °C unless otherwise agreed or specified in standards referred to in this annex.

The minimum and maximum operating temperature ( $T_{Omin}$  and  $T_{Omax}$ ) is the minimum and maximum environmental temperature for normal operation of the crane, where all effects of high and low temperatures have been taken into account.

G.3.3 Inclination angles

Cranes used onshore shall be designed for a minimum inclination from the horizontal of 1º in all directions.

Cranes used offshore shall be designed for a minimum inclination from the horizontal according to the following table:

Location	Inclinati	n angle	
	Heel	Trim	
Bottom fixed installations, tension leg platforms, jack-ups and submersibles (fixed)	10	1º	
Semi submersible/ jack-up (floating)	3º	3º	
Barges of length less than 4 times breadth	3º	2º	
Ships and vessels having shipshape hull properties	5°	2º	

The resulting maximum inclination from heel and trim of the installation for which the crane is designed, shall be taken into account in the design loads and shall be stated in the information for use.

## G.3.4 Horizontal loads due to operational motions

For cranes mounted on floating units or vessels, horizontal loads due to operational motions are

- a) inertia forces due to acceleration or deceleration of horizontal motions,
- b) centrifugal forces,
- c) forces transverse to rail resulting from reeling and skew motion,
- d) buffer loads.

The horizontal loads shall be taken into account in the design loads.

#### G.3.5 Wind loads

Cranes located outdoor in exposed areas shall be designed for loads due to wind in accordance with EN 13001-2. The wind velocities shall unless otherwise agreed between the buyer and the manufacturer, be taken as follows:

- a) 25 m/s for in service;
- b) 63 m/s for out of service.

NOTE These wind velocities are to be understood as a 3 s gust wind. Wind velocities are often given as 10 min mean wind velocity. A 3 s gust wind velocity of 25 m/s will correspond to about 17 m/s 10 min mean wind velocity, but may depend on surrounding structures on the platform.

#### G.3.6 Fixed load lifting attachments

Fixed load lifting attachments such as wire rope terminations, shackles, swivels, hooks and similar components shall be designed and equipped to minimize the risk of unintended entanglement.

NOTE This requirement can be met by a "slim and rounded" geometry, avoiding sharp edges/ protruding (extended) parts or installing additional protection such as plastic cones on wire rope terminations. Reference is made to 5.4.9.

Lifting accessories used in cranes shall comply with the requirements of Annex C.

## G.3.7 Lifting of persons

For the lifting of persons, the methods of decreasing the probability of failure in accordance with EN 13135-2, 5.12.3.2, shall be applied.

The risk coefficient  $y_n$  for cranes designed for the lifting of persons, shall be minimum 1,5.

The required performance level for cranes lifting personnel shall be d in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1.

## G.3.8 Cranes for temporary use offshore

Powered cranes intended for temporary use on an offshore installation shall also comply with NORSOK Z-015.

## G.4 Cranes with emergency operation system (EOS)

For cranes equipped with EOS in accordance with 5.15.3 the EOS shall have means to control the main functions of the crane (i.e. hoisting/lowering, luffing, slewing, telescoping, travelling), in case of an emergency where it is necessary to continue the lifting operation and secure the load and the crane, if a single failure has occurred in the normal operation system, see Figure G.1.

The EOS shall be initiated and controlled from the control station, with operator view to the crane and the load. The EOS shall be capable of handling all loads within the rated capacity.

The manual controls of the EOS shall be "hold to run" and shall be clearly and permanently marked.

Only one motion need to be operational at a time.

An emergency stop device for the EOS which shut off the emergency power supply and stops all motions shall be in reach of the crane operator at the control station.

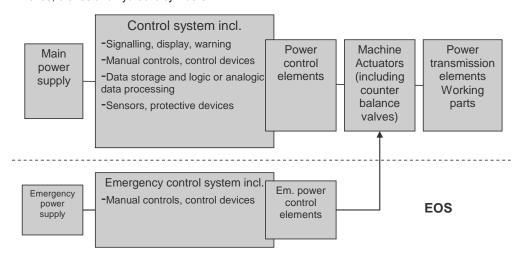
The EOS shall be operational within 1 min from standstill of the normal operation system, and the crane operator has initiated the EOS.

With reference to the schematic representation of EOS in Figure G.1, the EOS shall as a minimum comprise emergency manual controls, emergency power control elements, and an emergency power supply. These elements including their means of connections shall be additional to and independent of the main power and control system.

Duplication of elements in the normal operating system will fulfil the requirement of an EOS if it can be documented and proven that the normal operating system is fully redundant of any single failure in these elements.

During operation of the EOS, limiting and indicating devices, as well as protective systems, need not be available. However, emergency stop shall be available during operation of EOS.

The aim of the EOS shall be to operate the crane at reduced speed in an emergency situation regardless of any single failure of the main functions of the crane, except for failures in working parts, power transmission elements and machine actuators, where it is beyond state of the art to provide an EOS. Examples are winches, brakes and hydraulic cylinders.



NOTE For terminology, see EN ISO 12100-1.

## G.5 Emergency stop

All power driven cranes, winches and hoists shall be equipped with an emergency stop function in accordance with EN ISO13850.

#### G.6 Main switch

All power driven lifting appliances shall be equipped with a lockable main power supply isolation device, e.g. valve or switch.

## G.7 Mobile cranes (Group G1)

The design shall be in accordance with EN 13000, taking into account the additional design criteria given in G.1.

## G.8 Tower cranes (Group G2)

Tower cranes shall be designed in accordance with EN14439, taking into account the additional design criteria given in G.1.

## G.9 Slewing jib cranes (Group G3)

Slewing jib cranes shall be designed in accordance with EN14985, taking into account the additional design criteria given in G.1.

Loader cranes in accordance with EN 12999 mounted on a fixed foundation may also be used as slewing jib cranes, provided the requirements in G.14 are fulfilled.

## G.10 Bridge and gantry cranes (Group G4)

#### G.10.1 Design

Bridge and gantry cranes shall be designed in accordance with EN 15011, taking into account the additional design criteria given in G.1.

For bridge and gantry cranes used in the drilling area, the requirements of Annex D also apply.

#### G.10.2 Machinery

Hoist and travelling machinery shall have completely enclosed and sealed gearboxes with oil bath lubrication

Cranes on floating installations and vessels shall be furnished with rack and pinion drives and parking brakes for travelling.

#### G.10.3 Brakes

Brake adjustment mechanisms shall be protected against inadvertent use.

#### G.10.4 Access

The crane shall be designed with facilities for easy inspection and maintenance. Permanent access platforms shall be provided for inspection and maintenance of electrical motors, main electrical cabinets and hoist machinery.

Grease lubrication points shall be centralized where possible and accessible from walkways and access platforms.

## G.10.5 Weather protection

Machinery on cranes permanently located outdoor shall be protected against exposure to rain, snow, wind and sun.

## G.10.6 BOP and X-mas tree cranes

For BOP and X-mas tree cranes, see D.5.

#### G.10.7 Anti collision protection

Where there is a risk of collision between cranes running on the same rails, system for detection/motion limiters, proximity warning and automatic ramp down and stop of relevant motions shall be installed.

## G.11 Offshore cranes (Group G5)

## G.11.1 Size and capacity

In normal operation at significant wave height Hs = 0, the crane shall as a minimum be able to lift a load of 15 tonnes at a horizontal distance of 32 m from the side of the installation, measured at sea level.

The number, location and size of offshore cranes at an installation shall be compatible with B.5, B.6 and B.7.

The number of offshore cranes on each installation shall reflect any need of redundancy or overlap for crane coverage at normal operation and emergency operation of the installation if the cranes are part of the emergency preparedness plan.

The location of offshore cranes at the installation shall be selected to ensure optimal working conditions for the crane, the crane operator and avoid blind zones. The location shall be close to the outer edge of the deck area and such that the sight from the control station is unobstructed towards lay down areas and the sea surface where supply vessels are likely to be positioned. If necessary the height of the crane and crane cabin above the loading areas shall be increased in order to ensure optimal working conditions for the crane and the operator.

It is essential for safe operation of an offshore crane that the selected size provides safe working conditions regarding loads and radius for all operations. In particular, the radius for operation of offshore lifts shall be sufficient to ensure sufficient horizontal clearance between the loading area at sea level and the structure of the installation.

## G.11.2 Design

General purpose offshore cranes shall be in accordance with EN 13852-1, taking into account the additional design criteria given in G.3 and the following subclauses.

Offshore cranes shall be designed for 20 years of service life, minimum.

NOTE Reference is made to 5.8.

Typical service hours for offshore cranes on installations without drilling: 500 h/year to1000 h/year Typical service hours for offshore cranes on installations with drilling: 2000 h/year to 4000 h/year Service hours include idle running.

## G.11.3 Access

Offshore cranes for daily operation shall be equipped with a main access route and a separate alternative escape route between the entrance to the cabin/machinery house and the deck of the installation. The main access route shall have stairway ladders between different levels and be designed for the transport of supplies and spares, and in an emergency to facilitate transport of a stretcher, smoke diving and fire fighting equipment.

Fixed means of access shall be provided to areas of the crane requiring maintenance and inspection. For access between different levels externally on the crane, stairs should be used instead of ladders. Walkways of type 1 in accordance with EN 13586 shall be provided for access to crane boom.

A service platform shall be provided for safe access when changing the configuration of the crane, replacement of wire ropes and sheaves etc.

## G.11.4 View from the control station

The control station shall be arranged with the aim to give unobstructed view for the crane operator of the working area with the boom and the hook in any position. Any equipment, such as rated capacity indicators, camera monitors, window wipers, window protection bars, etc. shall be so located and arranged to reduce this view as little as possible.

NOTE This implies that metal grids in front of windows is not accepted.

The window wiper system shall be robust and suitable for a marine environment. Wipers on front window shall be oriented vertically and move horizontally and be able to keep at least 80 % of the window area clean from water and spray.

#### **G.11.5** Control station outfitting

The control station shall be equipped with an ergonomic chair for the operator with easy adjustments for optimal view and individual comfort. The main controls shall follow the movements of the chair.

Other controls and switches shall be located within the recommended reach for hands and feet. A second seat shall be provided for an instructor or a trainee.

#### G.11.6 Video camera (CCTV)

In order to allow overview of the suspended load and its surroundings from the crane operator's cabin, one or more cameras shall be mounted in the boom head in order to display a live picture in the crane operator's cabin. The live picture in the cabin shall be displayed on a different screen than the rated capacity indicator, without obstructing the view significantly. It shall be possible to zoom in and out on the load at all lifting heights.

#### G.11.7 Data recorder

A data recorder shall be installed for continuous logging of main operational data for the purpose of

- a) tracking of events, e.g.:
  - 1) overload,
  - 2) changes in operational parameters,
  - 3) alarm and acknowledge history.
- b) condition monitoring,
- c) fatigue assessment.

For tracking of events essential parameters (e.g. load, motion, speeds, position, limits, brake status, pressures, operator commands and alarm status) shall be continuously recorded. The recording system shall contain data for at least 30 calendar days.

For condition monitoring and fatigue assessment, the recorded data shall be continuously accumulated from day one and during the complete lifetime of the crane. It shall be possible at any time for user to display status for condition monitoring and fatigue assessment of the crane. The data may be compressed for the purpose of limiting the necessary storage capacity.

All data shall be continuously collected and stored. A back-up copy of the data shall frequently be stored independently.

#### G.11.8 Data remote access

A remote access system should be installed for access to

- a) condition monitoring,
- b) recorder files,
- c) monitoring of control system,
- d) update and backup of control system software.

Data should be continuously collected, processed and stored. A back-up copy of the data should be stored independently.

It should be possible at any time for user to download status and report for condition monitoring of the

## G.11.9 Wind speed indicator

The wind speed indicator in the control cabin shall include facility for displaying the 10 min mean wind speed.

The wind speed sensor should be located in the boom head.

## **G.11.10 Warning horn**

A warning horn shall be provided outside the crane at the control station for manual activation by the crane operator in emergencies etc. The warning horn shall have a sound level sufficient to attract the attention of people located at the loading areas of the crane during normal noise levels from the surroundings.

#### G.11.11 Hook and block protection device

Where there is a hazard of hooks or hook blocks to come into contact with the crane boom due to wind oscillations etc, the boom shall be provided with buffers or similar protection device to prevent damage to the boom structure.

## G.11.12 Rigging sensor

Cranes with the option for various rigging of the load hoist (i.e. single and multiple fall), shall be provided with an automatic detection system which give feedback to the control and safety system of the rigging configuration. The automatic detection system shall ensure that the setting of the control and safety system comply with the actual crane configuration.

#### G.11.13 Location of emergency stop

Emergency stop control device shall be arranged for rapid and unobstructed activation and shall be located at the right hand side of the operator.

#### **G.11.14 Location of MOPs manual control**

MOPs manual control device shall be arranged for rapid and unobstructed activation and shall be located at the left hand side of the crane operator.

#### G.11.15 AOPS simulation and testing

The characteristics of the AOPS system shall be analysed and documented by a simulation programme. The programme shall provide realistic representation of main elements that influence the AOPS response time and forces in an overload situation, e.g. crane stiffness, wire rope elasticity, hydraulic and electric components, moments of inertia from winches and gears, damping of hydraulic systems, load excitation etc.

The AOPS system shall have a built-in test facility which enables the system to be tested automatically by the system at start up or by the crane operator at suitable intervals, without physical changes of the crane. The status of the test shall be displayed to the crane operator. During testing it shall not be possible to operate the crane. The test shall include response time measurements.

#### **G.11.16 Hook velocities**

The vertical hook velocity shall be as a minimum:

$$V_H = K_H * \sqrt{V_D^2 + V_C^2}$$
 m/s (G.1)

where  $V_D$  and  $V_C$  is to be taken form EN 13852-1 and  $K_H$  is a velocity factor given in Table G.1

Table G.1 — Velocity factor  $K_H$ 

	Single fall reeving	Multiple fall reeving
No hook load	0,78	0,40
At rated capacity	0,50	0,28

The radial hook velocity measured at a radius of 3/4 of the maximum radius or 30 m radius, whichever is the longest radius, shall be as a minimum:

$$V_R = K_R * \sqrt{V_D^2 + V_C^2}$$
 m/s (G.2)

where  $V_D$  and  $V_C$  is to be taken form EN 13852-1 and  $K_R$  is a velocity factor according to Table G.2.

The required  $V_R$  also applies to the average radial hook velocity from maximum to minimum radius.

NOTE  $V_R$  may combine telescoping, folding and luffing, if applicable.

 $V_R$  is to be taken as an average value during luffing in at a radius of  $\frac{3}{4}$  of maximum radius.

The steady lateral hook velocity resulting from slewing motion at 3/4 of the maximum radius shall be as a minimum:

$$V_L = K_L * \sqrt{V_D^2 + V_C^2}$$
 m/s (G.3)

where  $V_D$  and  $V_C$  is to be taken from EN 13852-1 and  $K_L$  is a velocity factor according to Table G.2.

Table G.2 — Velocity factor  $K_R$  and  $K_L$ 

	<b>K</b> <sub>R</sub>	K∟
Any hook load	0,20	1,0

It shall be possible to operate vertical, radial and lateral crane movements simultaneously.

The actual hook speed (independent of direction) shall not be reduced below the minimum required hook speed when vertical, lateral and radial motions are combined. When operating simultaneous movements, any change in speed shall not result in sudden changes in other movements.

NOTE The vertical hook velocity may be the hoisting velocity governed by the winch drum rotational speed in combination with any other movements with a vertical speed component, i.e. luffing, knuckling, telescoping.

For the purpose of calculating the minimum required lateral and radial hook speeds, the maximum significant wave height for which the crane is designed shall be used. The actual radial and lateral hook speeds shall not depend on the chosen reeving configuration or significant wave height.

## G.11.17 Anti collision protection

Where there is a risk of collision between movable parts of offshore cranes and other cranes, equipment or fixed structures, system for detection/adjustable motion limiters, proximity warning and automatic ramp down and stop of relevant motions shall be installed.

## G.11.18 Subsea operations

Offshore cranes intended for handling of loads sub-sea shall be specially designed for such operations and shall fulfil the requirements of G.12.3.

## G.11.19 Rescue boat lifting operations

Offshore cranes intended for rescue boat lifting operations shall have hoisting speed not less than required in G.11.16 for rated capacity when lifting goods with single fall reeving. The hoisting speed shall be available for the actual weight of the rescue boat intended to be lifted.

For offshore cranes intended for rescue boat lifting operations, the requirements of 5.8.6 in EN 13852-1 are to be replaced by the requirements of 5.15 and G.4

The dynamic load chart shall include rescue boat operations from Hs = 0 m to Hs = 6 m.

The dynamic load chart for training and maintenance operations shall be calculated for sea states from Hs = 0 m to Hs = 3 m using load effects in accordance with EN 13001-2. Such operations are considered as load combinations A and B, ref. Table 10 of EN 13001-2, taking into account partial safety factors  $\gamma_p$  = 1,34 and 1,22, respectively, a dynamic coefficient  $\Phi_2$  = 2,5 and a risk coefficient  $\gamma_p$  = 1,5.

The dynamic load chart for emergency (real rescue) operations shall be calculated for sea states from Hs = 3 m to Hs = 6 m using load effects in accordance with EN 13001-2. Such operations are considered as load combination C, see Table 10 of EN 13001-2, taking into account partial safety factor  $\gamma_p$  = 1,1, a dynamic coefficient  $\Phi_2$  = 3,0 and a risk coefficient  $\gamma_n$  = 1,5.

NOTE The dynamic coefficients of 2,5 and 3,0 are related to lifting in Hs=3m and Hs = 6 m, respectively, and take into account the use of an elastic pendant in accordance with Annex A. The dynamic factors given for such elastic pendants do not take into account any favourable effect of the cranes own elasticity or damping. The favourable effects resulting from the combination of crane and pendant properties may be taken into account provided the total elasticity of crane and pendant is documented by calculations. Alternatively an elastic pendant with better elastic properties may be specified as a condition for the resulting load chart.

#### G.11.20 Instructions for lifting rescue boat with offshore cranes

The crane shall be equipped with a detailed instruction for rescue boat operations.

The dynamic load chart shall clearly state the conditions upon which it is based and, if relevant, the type and specification of the elastic pendant sling that is to be used.

The dynamic load chart shall differentiate between training operations and emergency operations.

NOTE In an emergency where the offshore crane is to be used for handling the rescue boat, it is to be noted that this operation has to be authorised by the installation management in each case. In an emergency situation the operational risks as well as the technical risks for the rescue team have to be balanced against the actual conditions and the probability of a successful rescue operation.

#### G.11.21 EOS system

EOS system in accordance with G.4 on offshore cranes shall be activated and operated from the crane cabin

## G.11.22 Interface to installation emergency systems

The crane shall be connected to the PA system, emergency alarm system and the fire and gas detection system on the installation.

A PA loudspeaker shall be located in the crane cabin. An indicator panel for the fire and gas status on the crane and its surrounding shall be installed in the crane cabin. A single fire or gas detection shall give an alarm at the indicator panel in the crane cabin.

Installation emergency alarms shall be installed in the machinery house.

Fire and gas detectors shall be installed in the air inlets to the crane cabin and combustion engines, and to other enclosed areas of the crane, e.g. the machinery house and pedestal.

Combustion engines shall be equipped with inlet air shut down valve to prevent engine over speeding. Air inlet systems shall be equipped with flame arresters. Exhaust systems shall be equipped with flame arresters and spark arresters.

Confirmed gas detection shall activate an immediate isolation of all potential ignition sources of the crane, unless the crane is in operation.

If a crane designed for operation in Zone 2 is in operation, confirmed gas detection shall initiate a shut down alarm in the crane cabin and a delayed shut down and ignition source isolation of the crane after a period of maximum 10 s. It shall be possible for the crane operator to postpone the shut down and the ignition source isolation, if this is considered necessary to terminate a critical lifting operation or use the crane for rescue operations. Reference is made to NORSOK S-001, Table 2, Crane (engine and cabin), Comment D.

# G.12 Floating cranes (Group G6)

#### G.12.1 Size and capacity

Reference is made to the relevant parts of the requirements given for offshore cranes in G.12.1.

#### G.12.2 Design

Floating cranes shall be in accordance with EN 13852-2.

For non-slewing cranes (e.g. A-frames etc.), applicable parts of EN 13852-2 apply.

In addition, floating cranes shall fulfil the requirements in G.11.2.1 including G.5.2.8 and the following.

# G.12.3 Location of emergency load release system (ELRS) manual control

ELRS control device shall be arranged for rapid and unobstructed activation and shall be located at the left hand side of the crane operator. Reference is made to EN 13852-2, 5.7.1.

#### G.12.4 Lifting appliances for subsea operations

#### G.12.4.1 General

Lifting appliances intended for sub sea operations shall be specially designed for such operations and shall fulfil the requirements in G.12.4.2 to G.12.4.11.

#### G.12.4.2 Sea water penetration and corrosion

The design shall minimise the sea water penetration and corrosion effects on hooks, swivels, lifting accessories, hoisting ropes, winches, etc. that are exposed to sea water.

#### G.12.4.3 Load hoist drum

The hoisting drum shall be designed according to DNV Standard for Certification of Lifting Appliances, Ch.2 Sec.5 B200 to withstand the additional forces on flanges and drum due to long lengths of hoisting rope used for subsea lifting for the load effects due to weight of hoisting rope, rope tension and the maximum number of windings of the rope onto the drum.

### G.12.4.4 Rated capacity indicator

The rated capacity indictor shall continuously compensate for the net (submerged) weight of the rope and lifting accessories suspended by the crane.

#### G.12.4.5 Tensioning and compensation systems

A rope tensioning and/or heave compensation system shall be installed. The chosen system (s) shall be designed for the specific subsea operations the crane is designed for.

Tensioning and compensation systems shall include wire rope heat and low cycle fatigue monitoring system due to kinetic energy.

#### G.12.4.6 Rope tensioning system

A rope tensioning system shall reduce the dynamic loads occurring during subsea operations, enable smooth landing and lift off from the seabed and avoid the hoisting ropes becoming slack.

#### G.12.4.7 Heave compensation system

A heave compensation system shall compensate relative motions between the crane and the seabed by automatically controlling the hook position relative to the seabed and enable smooth landing and lift off from the seabed and avoid the hoisting ropes becoming slack.

#### G.12.4.8 Performance level

Safety related parts of control systems for any active or passive rope tensioning or heave compensation systems shall where fitted, as a minimum comply with EN ISO 13849-1 required performance level d.

#### G.12.4.9 Subsea operation mode

The control station shall include a manually operated mode selection switch for sub sea operations.

While sub sea operation mode is selected, the ELRS/MOPS, AOPS and the rope tensioning/heave compensation systems shall be operative.

While the subsea operation mode is deactivated, AOPS and the rope tensioning/heave compensation system shall be deactivated.

Subsea operation mode shall be inhibited whenever the hooks are positioned over the installation deck

# G.12.4.10 Automatic overload protection system (AOPS)

The crane shall be equipped with an automatic overload protection system (AOPS) that automatically protects the crane from overload during subsea operations.

AOPS may be combined with heave compensation system/rope tensioning system.

NOTE Overload may occur due to relative motions between the crane and the load, entanglement of hooks to adjacent equipment or hook fixed to the seabed, etc.

#### G.12.4.11 Instruction for use for subsea operations

The instruction for use shall include detailed instructions for subsea operations. In particular the following shall be addressed:

- a) each subsea lifting operation shall be separately risk assessed and planned. As a minimum the following shall be taken into consideration: weather conditions, lift off and landing areas, lifting routes, motion characteristics, splash zones, waves, tides and current, etc.;
- a dynamic load chart for sub sea lifting shall be calculated for each separate lifting operation reflecting the weight, volume and shape of the lifted object, wave height and period, depth, current, vessel motions etc., and specific operational limitations;
- any operational limitations of rope tensioning or heave compensation systems (e.g. maximum or minimum stroke, pressures or velocities) shall be stated in the instruction for use in such a way to for the crane operator to limit or terminate the operation at specified limits. These limits shall reflect adequate safety margin for each lifting operation:
- d) the instruction for use shall include any general operational limitations and precautions concerning subsea lifting, and corresponding maintenance instructions for such service, including requirements for fresh water washing and cleaning of hook, blocks, ropes and drums etc. exposed to seawater after each operation;
- e) the instructions for use shall include detailed procedures and acceptance criteria for initial and periodic testing of any heave compensation, rope tensioning or ASOPS system that are installed on the crane.

#### G.13 Power driven winches and hoists (Group G7)

#### G.13.1 Design of power driven winches

Power driven winches shall be in accordance with EN 14492-1, using the design criteria given in G.3.

Power driven winches shall be equipped with a visual indication of the actual load during lifting operation.

NOTE An analogue pressure gauge may satisfy this requirement. The accuracy of the indicating device may be within +/- 10 % of the rated capacity for winches with rated capacity less than 20 tonnes. For winches with rated capacity of 20 tonnes and more the tolerance may be within +/- 15 %.

If the winch operator is unable to see the winch from the operator position a drum motion indicator shall be arranged at the operator position.

Power driven winches shall be quipped with spooling device with tensioning system to avoid slack wire on the drum.

Winches intended for sub sea operations shall comply with G.12.4.

#### G.13.2 Design of power driven hoists

Power driven hoists shall be in accordance with EN 14492-2, using the design criteria given in G.3.

Page 146 of 173

#### G.13.3 Design of man rider winches

Man rider winches shall be designed in accordance with DNV Offshore standard DNV-OS-E101 Ch.2 Sec. 5 I using the design criteria given in G.3 (except for risk coefficient  $\gamma_n$ =1,5)

The following requirements apply in addition:

- a) the wire rope shall have a diameter of minimum 10 mm. The wire rope shall be of rotation resistance construction:
- b) the guidance note in Ch.2 Sec. 5 I 404.1is not acceptable;
- c) the guidance note in Ch. 2 Sec. 5 I 207 is not acceptable;
- d) man riding winches shall have independent backup motion limiters in addition to those required by Ch. 2 Sec. 5 I 310 for both lowering and hoisting;
- e) a shackle shall be used for connection of wire rope to the man riding harness. The shackle shall have means of double locking;
- f) an emergency operation system (EOS) shall be provided in accordance with 5.15.3 and G.4 for immediate operation at power failure or failure in control system. A system operated only by hand power (e.g. crank system) may be acceptable if the requirements are fulfilled;
- g) emergency stop devices shall be provided at the operator positions. For remote operated winches, an additional emergency stop device shall be located at the winch;
- h) the hoisting and lowering speed shall be stepless variable not exceeding 1 m/s;
- i) manrider winches for operation in areas where there may be relative motions between the surroundings and the person being lifted shall have an automatic overload protection device to protect the person lifted from being exposed to pull forces exceeding 2.25 kN;
- j) an overspeed protection device shall be implemented to prevent free fall or excessive lowering speed without exposing persons or equipment to unacceptable accelerations.

Reference is also made to relevant parts of Annex C and Annex D for lifting accessories, man riding harness etc.

#### G.14 Loader cranes (Group G8)

Loader cranes shall be in accordance with EN 12999, using the design criteria given in G.3.

Motion limiters in accordance with EN 12077-2 shall ensure that overload of winch and/or wire rope is avoided

Winches on loader cranes shall be in accordance with EN 14492-1.

#### G.15 Cable cranes (Group G9)

Cable cranes shall be in accordance with this NORSOK standard.

# G.16 Hand powered hoists and trolleys (Group G10)

Hand powered hoists and trolleys shall be in accordance with EN 13157, using the design criteria given in G.3.

The safe functioning of hand powered hoists shall not be dependent upon the hoist being subjected to a minimum load.

Hand powered hoists shall have an overload protection device.

Brake pads shall be applied by two independent mechanisms to ensure brake function is activated. Each mechanism shall be able to transfer the forces necessary to stop and hold the load. The mechanism shall be protected against corrosion.

The chain end connection shall withstand the minimum breaking load of the chain.

Trolleys intended for floating installations shall have braking system to prevent unintended longitudinal **Tavedb**raking system should be of the rack and pinion principle to match runway beams required in Annex H.

# G.17 Other cranes (Group G20)

The design criteria stated in G.3 apply.

Mobile elevating work platforms shall be in accordance with EN 280.

Mast climbing platforms shall be in accordance with EN 1495.

Suspended access equipment shall be in accordance with EN 1808.

Lifting tables shall be in accordance with EN 1570.

For cranes used in drilling operations, reference is also made to the requirements in Annex D.

NOTE Powered slewing cranes mounted in a fixed installation (often referred to as "G20 cranes" in the industry) are covered by Group G3.

# Annex H (Normative) Foundations and suspensions

# H.1 General (Group H)

The requirements of this annex apply in addition to the requirements stated in Clause 1 to Clause 5.

# H.2 Group overview

Group no.	Group	Definitions
H1	Runway beams	Monorails and beams including their fastening to structure for suspension of permanent or temporary lifting
H2	Lifting lugs	Lugs including their fastening to structure for suspension of permanent or temporary lifting equipment.
H3	Sheave brackets	Sheave brackets including their fastening to structure for suspension of permanent or temporary sheaves.
H4	Foundations	Structural or mechanical parts used as foundation for permanent or temporary mounted lifting equipment to structure.

NOTE Foundations and suspensions are parts of lifting equipment, but do not represent lifting equipment by itself. For verification requirements of the lifting equipment as a whole, reference is made to 4.15.

# H.3 Design factors

The factors relevant for lifting design are summarized in Table H.1.

Table H.1 - Factors relevant for lifting design

			Load facto	Resistance factor	
APPLICATION	TO FIND	DAF	Design factor (DF)		γ̈́Rm
ALLEGATION	TOTIND	DAI	γр	γс	
Suspension and foundation design	Design load (P <sub>P</sub> )	Х	Х	Х	Х

The design load is defined as:  $P_P = SWL \cdot DAF \cdot DF$  (H.1)

The design factor DF is defined as:  $DF = \gamma_p \cdot \gamma_c \tag{H.2}$ 

where

$$\begin{split} \gamma_p &= \text{partial load factor} \\ \gamma_c &= \text{consequence factor} \end{split}$$

Table H.2 - Design factors (DFs)

ELEMENT CATEGORY	$\gamma_{p}$	γс	DF (γ <sub>p</sub> ·γ <sub>c</sub> )
Single critical elements of the suspension or foundation	1,34	1,25	1,68
Main elements of the suspension or foundation	1,34	1,10	1,48
Other structural elements of the suspension or foundation	1,34	1,0	1,34

Material resistance factor for check against yield strength for structural steel shall be, see NORSOK N-004:

- For lifting lugs including structural parts and full penetration welds:  $\gamma_{Rm} = 1,15$
- For fillet welds, partial penetration welds and bolted conditions:  $\gamma_{Rm} = 1.3$

# H.4 Design criteria

# H.4.1 Design loads

Design loads for foundations and suspensions shall be applied in accordance with 5.7 or standards referred to within this annex, whichever gives the most stringent requirement.

# H.4.2 Inclination angles

Foundations and suspensions used onshore shall be designed for a minimum inclination from the horizontal of 1° in all directions.

Foundations and suspensions used offshore shall be designed for a minimum inclination from the horizontal according Table H.3:

Table H.3 - Iclination agle

Location	Inclination angle			
	Heel	Trim		
Bottom fixed installations, tension leg platforms, jack-ups and submersibles (fixed)	10	10		
Semi submersible/ jack-up (floating)	3º	3º		
Barges of length less than 4 times breadth	3º	2º		
Ships and vessels having shipshape hull properties	5°	2º		

The resulting maximum inclination from heel and trim of the installation for which the foundations or suspensions are designed, shall be taken into account in the design loads and stated in the material handling plan, see B.7 b).

# H.4.3 Horizontal loads due to operational motions

For foundations and suspensions mounted on floating units or vessels, horizontal loads due to operational motions are

- inertia forces due to acceleration or deceleration of horizontal motions,
- forces transverse to rail resulting from reeling and skew motion,
- buffer loads.

The horizontal loads shall be taken into account in the design loads.

# H.5 Runway beams

#### H.5.1 General

The structures of runway beams are not regarded as cranes or machinery. They are considered as a part of the general structure. EN 1991-3 and EN 1993-6 cover these beams and the standards are written to match EN 13001-standards. Runway beams may alternatively be designed in accordance with NORSOK N-001, NORSOK N-003 and NORSOK N-004.

The design shall be based on the loads and loads effects which are described by the manufacturer of the specific lifting equipment that are to be suspended by the runway beams.

The design shall be compatible with the design of the trolleys and wheels with regards to wheel-rail contact etc. Reference is made to prCEN/TS 13001-3-3.

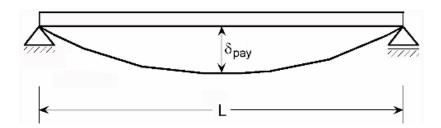
Runway beams should preferably be of HEB-profile steel beam.

#### H.5.2 Design loads

Unless otherwise agreed or stated by the manufacturer of the lifting equipment, the following design criteria shall be used:

- dynamic amplification factor (DAF) shall be taken as 1,5 for SWL up to and including 3 tonnes, and 1,3 for SWL above 5 tonnes. For SWL between 3 tonnes and 5 tonnes, DAF is to be found by linear interpolation.;
- runway beams should not be designed with a WLL of less than 0,5 tonn;
- the horizontal load in any direction shall be taken as minimum 10 % of SWL acting in the lowest suspension point. Any bending moments due to the low suspension point shall be included.

#### H.5.3 Deflection



Vertical deformation  $,\delta$ pay, of a runway beam relative to its supports (excluding load factors):

 $\delta$ pay  $\leq L/500$ 

#### H.5.4 End stoppers

Runway beams shall be provided with robust end stoppers on both sides on all open ends where the lifting equipment may become detached from the runway beams. Ensure that the width of the end stopper is as wide as the runway beam flange to prevent the trolley from falling off. The gap under the end stopper shall not exceed 30 mm to prevent the trolley wheels to pass under. The contact area of the end stoppers shall align with the part of the lifting equipment which is designed for such contact.

Runway beams shall be provided with special designed buffers and end stoppers to absorb the kinetic energy from the fully loaded trolley travelling at the corresponding maximum speed.

#### H.5.5 Rack and pinion

Runway beams on ships and floating units shall be equipped with racks compatible with pinion drives of the lifting equipment, see Annex G.

#### H.5.6 Fabrication

Fabrication tolerances of the flange width and thickness shall be in accordance to the specifications given by the trolley manufacturer.

Misalignment and welded joints shall be grinded flush and within the specifications given by the trolley manufacturer.

# H.5.7 Painting and marking

Runway beams shall be painted yellow (RAL 1003) and permanently marked with a unique identification and SWL visible from floor level (recommended size of letters are minimum 50 mm).

# H.5.8 Standardised dimensions (informative)

SWL (Tonnes)	Beam size	Maximum recommended span [m]		
		<b></b>	1	
1	HEB 100	4	1	
2	HEB 160	6	1,5	
3	HEB 200	8	2	
6	HEB 300	10	3	
8	HEB 360	10	3	
10	HEB 400	10	3	
12	HEB 450	10	3	
16	HEB 500	10	2,5	
20	HEB 650	10	2,5	

The standard dimensions are intended for fixed installation and horizontal loads of 10 %. Special considerations should be given to runway beams on floating installations or for applications with horizontal loads above 10 %.

Runway beams of SWL 3 tonnes and above shall be designed with arrangements for installation and removal of trolleys and hoists. A typical design of installation arrangement on runway beams is given in Figure H.1.

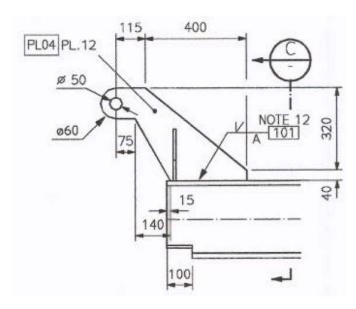


Figure H.1 – Typical installation arrangement on runway beams

# H.5.9 Documentation and testing

#### H.5.9.1 Load test requirements

Each runway beam shall be subjected to a proof load test according to Table H.4. The test load shall be applied in the following positions of the runway beam:

- mid span;
- · support points;
- cantilever outer end;
- · centre of turns.

Runway beams with turns or rack/pinion drive shall be functional tested throughout its full length with a trolley loaded with at least 50 % of the beam SWL.

Table H.4 - Proof test loads

Safe working load (SWL)	Static proof test load
Up to and including 5 tonnes	1,5 x SWL
>5 tonnes up to and including 20 tonnes	1,25 x SWL
>20 tonnes up to and including 50 tonnes	SWL + 5 tonnes
Above 50 tonnes	1,10 x SWL

When testing a series of identical runway beams, samples for testing may be selected according to Table H.5.

Table H.5 - Sample selection for proof load testing

Total number in series:	Number to be tested
1 to 3	All
4 to 6	3
7 to 10	4
11 to 15	5
16 to 25	6
26 to 40	8
>40	To be agreed with enterprise of competence

#### H.5.9.2 Documentation

In addition to the technical file required by 5.25, each runway beam shall be accompanied by a certificate, based on ILO form 2, issued by an enterprise of competence in accordance with NORSOK R-003, Annex E, or NORSOK R-005, as applicable. The certificate shall state the applied test load in accordance with

H.5.9.1. Lifting lugs

#### H.6.1 General

Lifting lugs are not regarded as cranes or machinery. They are considered as part of the general structure. Lifting lugs shall be designed in accordance with Annex J, NORSOK N-001, NORSOK N-003 and NORSOK N-004.

The design shall be based on the loads and loads effects which are described by the manufacturer of the specified lifting equipment that are to be suspended by the lifting lug.

The design shall be compatible with the shackle dimensions corresponding to the SWL of the lifting equipment.

#### H.6.2 Design loads

Unless otherwise agreed or stated by the manufacturer of the lifting equipment, the following design criteria shall be used:

- the dynamic amplification factor Φ shall normally not be less than 1,15 for hoisting speed up to 0,15 m/s.
   For hoisting speed above 0,15 m/s the dynamic amplification factor shall be calculated according to the requirements EN 13001-2, 4.2.2;
- if accelerations due to movements of floating installations have not been taken into account, the dynamic coefficient Φ shall not be less than 1,3;
- lifting lugs should not normally be designed with a WLL of less than 1 tonn;
- the horizontal load in any direction shall be taken as minimum 10 % of SWL acting in the centre of the suspension point (e.g. the centre of the shackle bow).

#### H.6.3 Painting and marking

Lifting lugs shall be painted yellow (RAL 1003) and permanently marked with a unique identification and SWL visible from floor level (recommended size of letters are minimum 50 mm).

#### H.6.4 Documentation and testing

# H.6.4.1 Load test requirements

Each lifting lug shall be subjected to a proof load test according to Table H.4.

When testing a series of identical lifting lugs, samples for testing may be selected according to Table H.5.

#### H.6.4.2 Documentation

In addition to the technical file required by 5.25, each lifting lug shall be accompanied by a certificate, based on ILO form 2, issued by an enterprise of competence in accordance with NORSOK R-003, Annex E, or NORSOK R-005, as applicable. The certificate shall state the applied test load in accordance with H.6.4.1.

# H.7 Sheave brackets

#### H.7.1 General

Sheave brackets are not regarded as lifting equipment. They are considered as foundations for lifting appliances. The sheave bracket will normally comprise a base plate for fixed attachment to the structure, side plates, axle, bearings, wire sheave (pulley wheel), and sometimes a pivot arrangement for sideways movement.

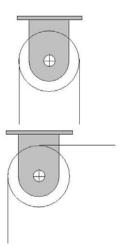
H.7.2 Design loads

Merknad [gum1]: Helt nytt kapittel Unless otherwise agreed or stated by the manufacturer of the lifting equipment, the following design criteria shall be used:

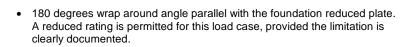
- dynamic amplification factor (DAF) shall be taken as 1,5 for line pull up to and including 3 tonnes, and 1,3 for line pull above 5 tonnes. For line pull between 3 tonnes and 5 tonnes, DAF is to be found by linear interpolation.
- The line pull is normally the SWL of the lifting appliance in which the sheave is integrated and the load on the bracket is the vector sum of the two line pull loads;
- all conditions shall be checked with 4° misalignment out of plane (fleet angle).

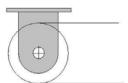
The load shall be calculated for the following conditions:

 180 degrees wrap around angle, acting perpendicular to the foundation plate;



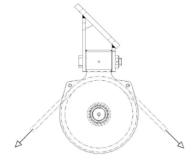
 90 degrees wrap around angle acting perpendicular and parallel to the base plate;





Flag blocks shall be designed for symmetric angular load as shown. Supplier shall clearly state the angular limitations, and range of sideways movement.

The limits of operation shall be clearly stated in the documentation.



Typical sheave bracket design load for a lifting appliance with a given line pull (SWL):

 $P_p$  = (Vector sum of line pull forces, i.e. max 2 x SWL) x DAF x DF

and DF = 1,68 as defined in H.3.

#### H.7.3 Painting and marking

Sheave brackets shall be painted yellow (RAL 1003) and permanently marked with a unique identification.

#### H.7.4 Documentation and testing

The following documentation shall be available:

- drawings;
- · calculations;
- · manufacturing records.

Sheave brackets shall be tested together with the complete lifting appliance before taken into operation. The test load requirements for the lifting appliance shall be applied.

#### H.8 Foundations

#### H.8.1 General

Foundations are not regarded as cranes or machinery. They are considered as part of the general structure. Foundations shall be designed in accordance with NORSOK N-001, NORSOK N-003 and NORSOK N-004. The design shall be based on the loads and load effects which are described by the manufacturer of the specific lifting appliance that is to be installed.

#### H.8.2 Painting and marking

Foundations shall be painted yellow (RAL 1003) and permanently marked with a unique identification.

#### H.8.3 Documentation and testing

The following documentation shall be available:

- · drawings;
- calculations;
- · manufacturing records.

Foundations shall be tested together with the complete lifting appliance before taking into operation.

# Annex I (Informative) Selection of elastic pennant – Calculation example

# I.1 General

This annex serves as an example of how to select appropriate dimensions for an elastic pennant in accordance with A.7.4.1.

# I.2 Input parameters

Mass of fully equipped rescue boat

with full complement of persons: 4 000 kg

Required WLL for elastic pennant: WLL<sub>R002A</sub> = 4 000 kg

Hoisting speed:  $v_{Hmax} = 2.0 \text{ m/s}$ 

Host facility: Semisub

where

v<sub>Hmax</sub> is the maximum steady state hoisting speed of which the offshore crane at the host installation is able to lift the weigh of the rescue boat

# Data for fibre rope, given by rope manufacturer

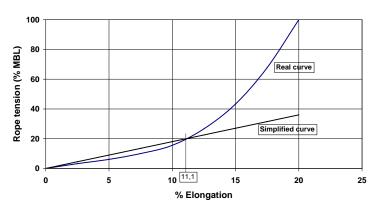
Rope construction: 8-strand plaited nylon rope

Table for rope diameter vs MBL (minimum braking load):

Diameter	MBL
(mm)	(kN)
44	350
48	410
52	480
56	550
60	630
64	710
68	790

Curve for static stiffness based on used rope, obtained from tests after pre-loading the rope to  $2.5 \, x \, WLL_{R002A}$ , is shown in the figure below.

#### Static stiffness curve



The static stiffness is taken as the gradient of a simplified linear curve crossing the real curve through 20 %MBL.

$$S_s = \frac{20}{11,1} = 1,80 \tag{I.1}$$

#### Rope diameter:

The rope diameter is selected based on the required minimum breaking load with a minimum static safety factor of 10, taking into account a reduction factor of 10 % for splices:

Required minimum breaking load:

$$MBL_{req} = \frac{10 \cdot 4000 \cdot 9,81}{0.9} = 436000N = 436kN$$
 (I.2)

Necessary rope diameter, from table: 52mm

Actual minimum breaking load selected from rope manufacturers catalogue:

$$MBL_{Act} = 480kN$$

Actual spring rate:

$$K_{S} = \frac{MBL_{Act} \cdot S_{S}}{L} = \frac{480 \cdot 1,80}{L} kN/m$$
 (1.3)

#### Minimum rope length:

The velocities applicable for calculation of the dynamic factor,  $\Phi$ , can be calculated from the input parameters:

Load combination:	LCA	LCC
Sign. wave height, Hs:	3 m	6 m
V <sub>H</sub> (m/s)	1,00	1,00
V <sub>D</sub> (m/s)	1,97	2,64
V <sub>C</sub> (m/s)	0,75	1,50
V <sub>R</sub> (m/s)	3,11	4,03

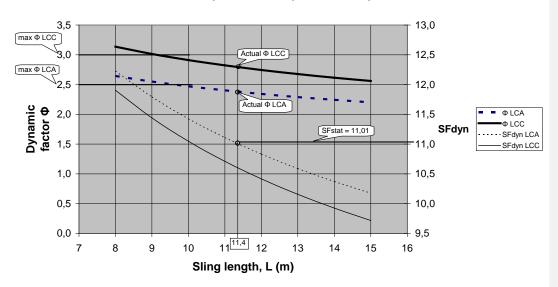
The dynamic factor,  $\Phi$ , and the dynamic safety factor, SFdyn, for LCA and LCC can be calculated from the length of the elastic pennant:

Length of elastic pennant	LCA		LCC	
L (m)	Ф	SFdyn	Ф	SFdyn
8	2,64	12,23	3,14	11,90
9	2,55	11,79	3,01	11,44
10	2,47	11,42	2,91	11,05
11	2,40	11,11	2,82	10,71
12	2,34	10,83	2,74	10,42
13	2,29	10,59	2,68	10,16
14	2,24	10,37	2,62	9,92
15	2,20	10,18	2,56	9,72

The minimum required length of the elastic pennant may be plotted against the dynamic factor,  $\Phi$ , and the dynamic safety factor, SFdyn, as follows:

Based on this plot, it can be shown that the minimum required length is 11,4 m.

# Dynamic factor $\Phi$ and dynamic safety factor SFdyn



# Annex J (Informative) Lifting lugs and mating shackles

#### J.1 General

Design of lifting lugs and mating shackles is highlighted in this annex.

Some applications where lifting lugs have to be designed are listed below:

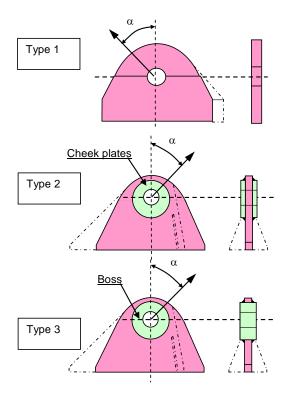
- lifting lugs on equipment or units to be used for transportation, installation and decommissioning, see Annex F;
- lifting lugs for suspension of permanent or temporary lifting equipment, see Annex H;
- lifting lugs integrated in lifting accessories, see Annex C

# J.2 Design of lifting lugs

# J.2.1 Types of lifting lugs

Lifting lugs are divided into four different types:

- Type 1 is the basic type manufactured from one single plate.
- Type 2 has one cheek plate fillet welded on each side of the plate.
- Type 3 has a boss fillet welded through the plate.
- Type 4 has a boss partly welded to the plate with full penetration weld.



# TYPE 1

Typical for shackles with WLL  $\leq 8.5$  Tonnes Load angle between  $-90^{\circ} \leq \alpha \leq 90^{\circ}$ 

#### TYPE 2, 3 and 4 (WLL < 55T)

Typical for shackles with WLL  $\leq$  55 Tonnes Load angle between  $-90^{\circ} \leq \alpha \leq 90^{\circ}$ 

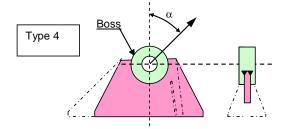


Figure J.1 - Lifting lugs Type 1, 2, 3 & 4. Dotted lines indicate alternative designs

# J.2.2 Lifting lug connection to structures

A general recommendation is to design the connection between lifting lug and supporting structure as a shear connection. Out-of-plane loading should be minimized.

For welded lifting lugs, through thickness properties must be documented in cases where it is impractical to avoid stresses in thickness direction, e.g. by use of z-quality material or by additional ultrasonic testing for lamination.

An alternative, to avoid lamination problems, is to slot the plate through the horizontal flange and weld directly onto the underlying vertical web plates. This applies specially to heavy loaded lifting lugs.

The stress level locally at the base of the Lifting lug may be reduced by adding a fillet weld onto a part pen (or full pen) weld.

Bolted connections shall be minimum M12 size and should be designed to transfer the load

- by shear, without considering the friction mobilized in the connection,
- or alternatively by vertically orientated bolts in tension.

Examples shown in Figure J.2 and Figure J.3:

Figure J.3 - Welded/bolted connections

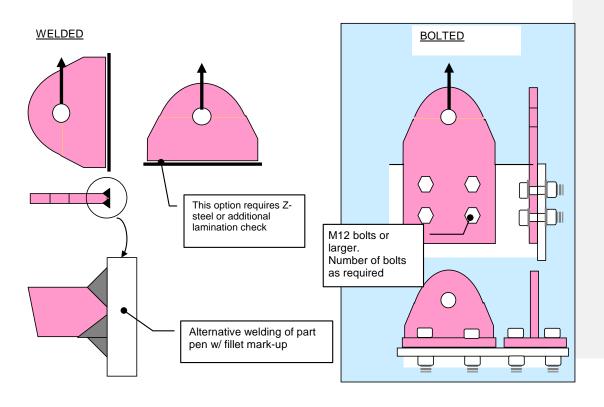
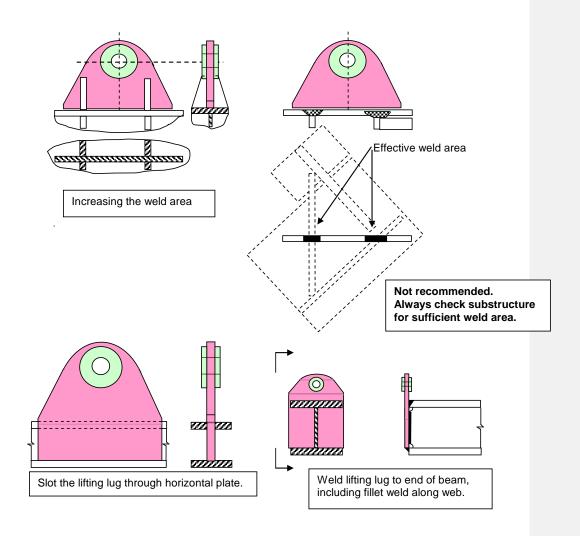


Figure J.4 - Welded connections



# J.2.3 Lifting lug/shackle accommodation

Lifting lugs should be design to match the relevant standard shackle dimensions, and to account for tolerance deviation between the different shackle types. The selected shackle shall house both lifting lug and selected sling or hook, see Figure J.4.

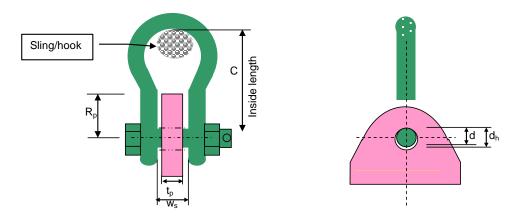


Figure J.5 - Lifting lug vs. shackle interface - Type 1 Lifting lug shown

The following guidelines for lifting lug geometry are based on shackle geometry, nominal dimensions and tolerances as specified in EN 13889 and U.S. Federal Spec. RR-C-271.

#### J.2.4 Lifting lug hole diameter

Lifting lug hole diameter should be determined by:

$$d_h = 1.03 * d + 3 \tag{J.1}$$

where

d<sub>h</sub> = lifting lug hole diameter

d = shackle bolt diameter

Maximum hole diameter shall not exceed  $d_h + 3\%$ 

# J.2.5 Lifting lug plate thickness

Total lifting lug plate thickness t<sub>p</sub> should fulfil the following criterion:

$$0.7 * w_s \le t_p \le (0.9 * w_s - 3)$$
(J.2)

where  $w_s$  is the shackle jaw, i.e inside width of shackle at bolt section, see Figure J.5.

Note that a company, project or unit may have standardized plate thicknesses to be used.

#### J.2.6 Lifting lug radius

Lifting lug radius,  $R_{\text{p.}}$  shall be derived by addressing the tear-out capacity but also by checking towards shackle and sling/hook geometry in terms of sufficient space.

Recommended radius is described by the following formula;

$$1.3*d_h \le R_p \le 1.7*d_h \tag{J.3}$$

Page 164 of 173

#### where

d = shackle bolt diameter

d<sub>h</sub> = hole diameter

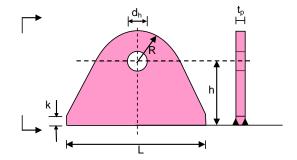
R<sub>p</sub> = radius from centre of hole to lifting lug edge

#### J.2.7 Lifting lug geometry

Lifting lug geometry should be decided on the basis of a load distribution perspective and an operational judgement. The following examples of complete lifting lug geometry may form such basis.

Shackle geometry and tolerances are based on Dee shackles and Bow shackles according to EN 13889 and US Federal Spec. RR-C-271.

Type 1 – Load Angle - 
$$90^{\circ} \le \alpha \le 90^{\circ}$$



Dimensions in mm

 $d_h = 1,03 \cdot d + 3$  (Minimum hole diameter)

 $1,3 \cdot d_h < R < 1,8 \cdot d_h$ 

 $0.7 \cdot w_s \le t_p \le 0.9 \cdot w_s - 3$ 

 $h = 2,2 \cdot d_h$ 

L = 2,5 · h

D = shackle bolt diameter

w<sub>s</sub> = inside width of shackle at bolt section

 $\alpha$  = load angle relative to vertical

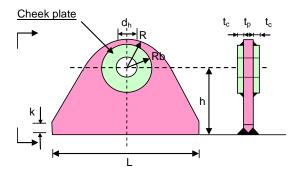
Maximum hole diameter shall not exceed  $d_h + 3\%$ 

Figure J.6 - Lifting lug Type 1 geometry - Single plate

Table J.1 - Type 1 - Single plate

SWL	t <sub>p</sub>	d <sub>h</sub>	R	h	L	k
tonnes	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm
1,0	12	14	18	30	80	12
1,5	15	15	20	35	85	15
2,0	15	19	26	45	110	15
3,25	20	22	30	50	125	20
4,75	25	26	35	60	140	25
6,5	30	28	38	65	160	30
8,5	35	32	42	70	180	35
9,5	35	36	47	80	200	35

Type 2 – Load angle - 
$$90^{\circ} \le \alpha \le 90^{\circ}$$



Dimensions in mm

 $d_h = 1,03 \cdot d + 3$  (Minimum hole diameter)

 $1,0 \cdot d_h < R_b < 1,5 \cdot d_h$ 

 $R = R_b + t_c$ 

 $tc = (0.9 \cdot w_s - 3 - tp)/2$ 

h = 2,2 · d<sub>h</sub>

L = 2,5 · h

d = shackle bolt diameter

 $w_s$  = inside width of shackle at bolt section  $\alpha$  = load angle relative to vertical

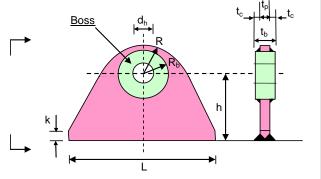
 $\begin{array}{ll} \text{Maximum hole diameter shall not exceed} \\ \textbf{d}_h + 3\% \end{array}$ 

Figure J.7 - Lifting lug Type 2 geometry - Cheek plates each side

Table J.2 - Type 2 - Cheek plates

SWL tonnes	t <sub>p</sub> mm	<b>d</b> h mm	R mm	h mm	L mm	k mm	R <sub>b</sub> mm	t <sub>c</sub> mm
8,5	20	32	50	70	175	20	42	8
9,5	25	36	55	80	200	20	48	8
12	25	40	60	88	220	25	52	8
13,5	25	43	66	95	236	25	56	10
17	30	47	71	103	258	30	61	10
25	35	55	84	121	302	35	72	12
35	40	62	96	136	341	40	81	15
42	50	70	106	154	385	50	91	15
55	50	75	118	165	410	50	98	20

Type 3 – Load angle 
$$-90^{\circ} \le \alpha \le 90^{\circ}$$



Dimensions in mm

d<sub>h</sub> = 1.03 · d + 3 (Min. hole diameter)

 $1,0 \cdot d_h < R_b < 1,5 \cdot d_h$ 

 $R = R_b + t_c$ 

 $tc = (0.9 \cdot w_s - 3 - tp)/2$ 

 $h = 2,2 \cdot d_h$ 

L = 2,5 · h

Boss thickness =  $t_b = t_p + 2 \cdot t_c$ 

 $0.7 \cdot w_s < R_b < 0.9 \cdot w_s - 3$ 

d = shackle bolt diameter

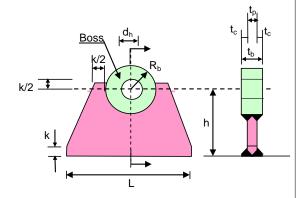
w<sub>s</sub> = inside width of shackle at bolt section

 $\alpha$  = load angle relative to vertical

Maximum hole diameter shall not exceed  $d_h + 3\%$ 

Figure J.8 - Lifting lug Type 3 geometry - Boss through plate

Type 4 – Load angle  $-90^{\circ} \le \alpha \le 90^{\circ}$ 



Dimensions in mm

 $d_h = 1,03 \cdot d + 3$  (Minimum hole diameter)

 $1,3 \cdot d_h < R_b < 1,5 \cdot d_h$ 

 $tc = (0.9 \cdot w_s - 3 - tp)/2$ 

 $h = 2,2 \cdot d_h$ 

L = 2,5 · h

Boss thickness =  $t_b = t_p + 2 \cdot t_c$ 

 $0.7 \cdot w_s < R_b < 0.9 \cdot w_s - 3$ 

d = shackle bolt diameter

 $w_s$  = inside width of shackle at bolt section

 $\alpha$  = load angle relative to vertical

Maximum hole diameter shall not exceed  $d_h + 3\%$ 

Figure J.9 - Lifting lug Type 4 geometry - Boss welded partly to plate

Table J.3 - Type 3 and Type 4 - Boss types

SWL	t <sub>p</sub>	d <sub>h</sub>	R	h	L	k	$R_b$	t <sub>c</sub>
tonnes	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm
12	25	40	60	88	220	25	52	8
13,5	25	43	66	95	236	25	56	10
17	30	47	71	103	258	30	61	10
25	35	55	84	121	302	35	72	12
35	40	62	96	136	341	40	81	15
42	50	70	106	154	385	50	91	15
55	50	75	118	165	410	50	98	20

# J.2.8 Lifting lug strength calculations

# J.2.8.1 Load components

The lifting lug design force  $P_{\mathbb{P}}$  is defined in Annex F or Annex H as applicable.

Vertical and horizontal component of Pp

$$\begin{aligned} &P_{pv} = P_p * \cos \alpha \\ &P_{ph} = P_p * \sin \alpha \end{aligned}$$

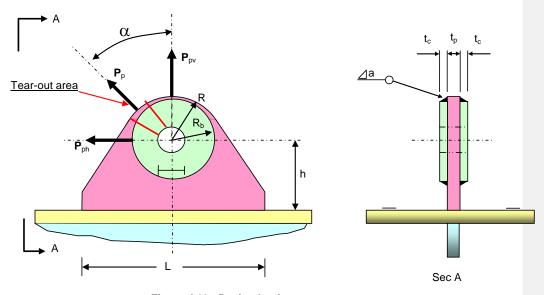


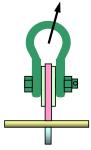
Figure J.10 - Design load components

The above tables are guidelines only. The actual lifting lug has to be checked using the partial factors and the design load applicable for the installation according to Annex F or Annex H.

The lateral load specified in Annex F or Annex H shall be applied acting in the centre of the shackle bow as indicated in Figure J.10.

This load is not accounted for in the following text and shall be considered additionally.

Figure 10 Lateral load acting in the centre of the shackle bow



#### J.2.8.2 Limit design stress

The limit design stress is:

$$f_d = \frac{f_y}{\gamma_{Rm}} \tag{J.4}$$

where

 $f_y$  = yield stress

YRm = material resistance factor

Material resistance factors shall be as follows:

- for lifting lugs including structural parts and full penetration welds: VRm = 1,15
- for fillet welds, partial penetration welds and bolted connections:

  YRm = 1,3

#### J.2.8.3 Tear-out Limit design stress

Limit design shear stress should be assessed to satisfy the following condition:

$$f_{rd} = \frac{f_y}{\sqrt{3} * \gamma_{Rm}} \ge \tau_{Ed} \tag{J.5}$$

where TEd is the tear out stress.

$$\tau_{Ed} = \frac{P_p}{2 * A_{sh}} \tag{J.6}$$

where

$$A_{sh} = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \left(R - \frac{d_h}{2}\right) * t_p & \textit{For Type 1} \\ \left(R - \frac{d_h}{2}\right) * t_p + 2 * \left(R_b - \frac{d_h}{2}\right) * t_c & \textit{For Type 2 and Type 3} \\ \left(R_b - \frac{d_h}{2}\right) * t_b & \textit{For Type 4} \end{array} \right.$$

# J.2.8.4 Load bearing limit design stress at pinhole edge

Design bearing limit design stress should be assessed to satisfy the following condition:

$$f_d = 1.5 * \frac{f_y}{\gamma_{Rm}} \ge \sigma_b \tag{J.7}$$

where  $\sigma_b = pin hole bearing stress.$ 

$$\sigma_b = \frac{P_p}{t_{eff} * d} \tag{J.8}$$

where

$$t_{eff} = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} t_p & For \mathit{Type} \ 1 \\ t_p + \ 2 * t_c & For \mathit{Type} \ 2 \text{,} \mathit{Type} \ 3 \ \mathit{and} \ \mathit{Type4} \end{array} \right.$$

# J.2.8.4 Fillet weld limit design stress for Type 2 and Type 3

Fillet weld limit design stress should be assessed to satisfy the following condition:

$$f_d = \frac{f_y}{\sqrt{3} * \gamma_{Rm}} \ge \tau_{Ed} \tag{J.9}$$

where TEd is the fillet weld shear stress.

Force distribution is assumed to be according to thickness of lifting lug plate and cheek plates.

For each cheek plate, the following should be assumed:

Effective weld length is  $\frac{2}{3}$  of total circumference:

$$L_{eff} = \frac{2}{3} * 2 * \pi * R_b \tag{J.10}$$

Load through weld of each cheek plate:

$$P_{cp} = \frac{P_p*t_c}{t_p+2*t_c}$$

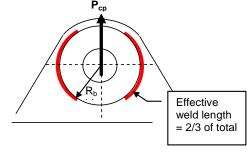


Figure J.11 – Effective weld length

Fillet weld shear stress:

$$\tau_{Ed} = \frac{P_{cp}}{L_{eff}*a} = \frac{P_p*t_c}{\left(t_p + 2*t_c\right)*\frac{4}{3}*\pi*R_b*a} \tag{J.12}$$

where

= nominal throat size of the fillet weld.

 $R_b$  = cheek plate radius in mm

 $P_p$  = lifting lug design force

tp = lifting lug plate thickness

 $t_{C}$  = cheek plate thickness

YRm = material resistance factor

# J.2.8.5 Weld strength for Type 4

Weld limit design stress should be assessed to satisfy the following condition:

$$f_d = \frac{f_y}{\gamma_{Rm}} \ge \sigma \tag{J.13}$$

Weld between boss and plate shall have full penetration.

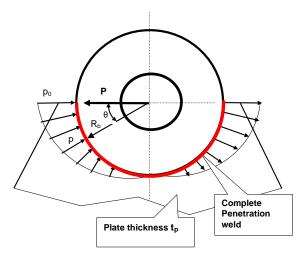


Figure J.12 – Horizontal loaded boss

Find the maximum stress  $\sigma_{\text{0}}$  for horizontal load :

$$p = p_0 * \cos \theta \tag{J.14}$$

$$\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} p * R_b * d\theta * \cos \theta = \frac{P}{2}$$
(J.15)

$$\int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} p_{0} * \cos \theta^{2} * R_{b} * d\theta = \frac{P}{2}$$
(J.16)

$$\int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \cos^{2}\theta = \frac{P}{p_{0} * 2 * R_{b}} \tag{J.17}$$

$$\int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \cos^{2} \theta = \frac{1}{2} * \int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} [\sin \theta * \cos \theta + \theta] = \frac{\pi}{4}$$
 (J.18)

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = \frac{P}{p_0 * 2 * R_b} \tag{J.19}$$

$$p_{0} = \sigma_{0} * t_{p} = \frac{2 * P}{\pi * R_{b}} \tag{J.20}$$

Page 170 of 173

$$\sigma_0 = \frac{2 * P}{\pi * R_b * t_p} \tag{J.21}$$

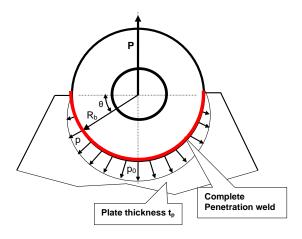


Figure J.13 - Vertical loaded boss

Find the maximum stress  $\sigma_0$  for vertical load :

$$p = p_0 * \sin \theta \tag{J.22}$$

$$\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} p * R_b * d\theta * \sin \theta = \frac{P}{2}$$
(J.23)

$$\int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} p_{0} * \sin \theta^{2} * R_{b} * d\theta = \frac{P}{2}$$
(J.24)

$$\int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin^{2}\theta = \frac{P}{p_{0} * 2 * R_{b}} \tag{J.25}$$

$$\int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin^{2}\theta = \frac{1}{2} * \int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} [-\sin\theta * \cos\theta + \theta] = \frac{\pi}{4}$$
 (J.26)

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = \frac{P}{p_0 * 2 * R_b} \tag{J.27}$$

$$p_0 = \sigma_0 * t_p = \frac{2 * P}{\pi * R_b} \tag{J.28}$$

$$\sigma_0 = \frac{2*P}{\pi*R_b*t_p} \tag{J.29}$$

It is seen that the maximum stress magnitude is equal for horizontal and vertical loading, located at different positions of the plate/boss interface.

Consider  $P_{\text{p}}$  acting at an angle  $\alpha$  to the vertical as shown in Figure J.8.

At a point of the boss / plate interface located at an angle  $\theta$  below the horizontal (Figure J.12 and Figure J.13) the sum of the stress contributions from  $P_{ph}$  and  $P_{pv}$  will be :  $\sigma_{\theta} = \sigma_{\theta h} + \sigma_{\theta v} = \frac{2*P_{ph}}{\pi*R_b*t_p} * cos\theta + \frac{2*P_{pv}}{\pi*R_b*t_p} * sin\theta \tag{J.30}$ 

$$\sigma_{\theta} = \sigma_{\theta h} + \sigma_{\theta v} = \frac{2 * P_{ph}}{\pi * R_h * t_n} * \cos\theta + \frac{2 * P_{pv}}{\pi * R_h * t_n} * \sin\theta$$
(J.30)

$$\sigma_{\theta} = \sigma_{\theta h} + \sigma_{\theta v} = \frac{2*P_{p}}{\pi*R_{b}*t_{p}} \left( sin\alpha * cos\theta + cos\alpha * sin\theta \right) \tag{J.31}$$

The maximum value of  $\sigma_{\theta}$  is:

$$\sigma_{\mathsf{max}} = \frac{2*P_{\mathsf{p}}}{\pi*R_{\mathsf{b}}*t_{\mathsf{p}}} \tag{J.32}$$

Weld limit design stress

$$f_d = \frac{f_y}{\gamma_{Rm}} \ge \sigma_{max} \tag{J.33}$$

